

黄邦傑 编著

汉英虚词句式

商务印书馆

078770

汉英虚词句式

黄邦傑 编著



商务印书馆

1994年·北京



本书原出版者为三联书店(香港)有限公司,现征得其同意,由本馆用简体字排印在内地发行,并将原来所附的简化字检字表删去。

DV41/29

HĀNYĪNG XŪCÍ JÙSHÌ

汉英虚词句式

编著者 黄邦傑

责任编辑 杨枕旦

商务印书馆出版

(北京王府井大街36号 邮政编码100710)

新华书店总店北京发行所发行

河北省香河县第二印刷厂印刷

ISBN 7-100-00889-1/H·307

1994年8月第1版

开本 787×1092 1/32

1994年8月北京第1次印刷

字数 143千

印数 2200册

印张 7 1/8

定价: 4.60元

新华书店
PDG

著者简介

本书著者黄邦傑先生，广东惠阳人，世居香港，早年负笈北上，五十年代初毕业于北京大学。从事中译英、英译中工作近四十年；译书之余，旁及翻译教学，曾在香港大学、浸会学院、香港理工学院等开办的翻译研讨班、在职新闻工作者翻译进修班、研究生班、MIL 文凭考试精修课程班讲学。

八〇年返港定居以来，历任香港中国旅游杂志英文编辑部主任、三联书店特约编辑、明文出版(远东)有限公司辞书/翻译出版总编辑、香港牛津大学出版社编辑顾问(双语词典)、LAC 翻译、制作公司总经理。

一九八八年为英国语言学会会士(FIL)、香港翻译学会会士、香港翻译学会 92—94 届副会长。

著作方面除本书外，尚有《译艺谭》、《中国少数民族服饰》、《翻译研究路向》、《中国翻译简史》、《翻译的种类与标准》等。

译作方面有《荒凉山庄》、《不体面的美国人》、《变动中的潮流》、《维多利亚女王之子》、《垂直的梯子》、《陈复礼中国风景摄影集》等十多种。

主编有《明文初阶英汉双解词典》、《明文进阶英汉双解词典》、《明文常用英语正误词典》。

写在北京版之前

《汉英虚词句式》最先出的是香港版，那是在1984年；其后台湾书林出版社于1991年出了台湾版；现在又获北京商务印书馆垂青，出北京版。北京版虽则比香港版前后晚了十年，我还是感到很高兴，记得我另一本拙作《译艺谭》出北京版时我曾说过：“北京版的印刷量势必大大超过港台版，作为本书著者，我自然感到说不出的高兴。”

我在北京生活的三十年，主要从事英译中的工作。1980年回港定居之前考虑到离开香港30年，人地生疏，为了讨生活，不能独沽一味，而应在中译英方面作些准备。当时我认为最好的办法就是写一本这样的书，既作为对中译英的研究，也作为自己在这方面的练习。我大都是先写好中文句子，然后动笔英译，尽可能找出多种表达方式，训练自己。结果，我这路子走对了。回港后，相当长一段工作时间竟是以中译英为主。很幸运，虚词句式的英译练习还真能帮我在香港挣到一口饭吃，因此我想这本小册子也许对初习中译英者会有点用吧。

遗憾的是，在港长为衣食奔走，竟抽不出时间为这小书作些增订，虽则平时读书看报也收了些句式，譬如“一点儿”原书收了39种，现在手头又收有近20种了。等过三五年真正退休时再好好增订吧。这里补入一篇小文，讲的是虚词的译法，那是香港中文大学编纂一本 *An Encyclopaedia of Dictionary* 时约我写的一个词条，算是北京版的一个小补。

北京版承商务印书馆副总编辑徐式谷先生热诚相邀，外

2 写在北京版之前

语编辑室主任朱原先生大力支持，又承责任编辑杨枕旦先生
细心校订，十分感激，谨此致谢。

黄邦傑

一九九三年五月于香港

前言

虚词难译

做了若干年翻译,也教了若干年翻译,深深地体会到,无论中译英或用英文写作,最难表达者往往是虚词,譬如:“他要不知道才怪呢!”——这个“才”字就是个虚词,在句中表示一种强调的语气,有人译作:“*It would be strange if he didn't know.*”这当然也可以,表面看还是忠实的,但原文那种强调的语气却没有了。如果改为:“*I'd be really surprised if he didn't know!*”也许好一些,因为有了“*really*”,那“才”的语气便多少可以带出来了,如果译者根据上下文和人物性格,认为不妨把语气译得粗一些、强一些,也可以这样处理:“*I'll be damned if he didn't know!*”

至于虚词短语的译法就更复杂一些,也更重要一些。你看:“现在,你非向她道歉不可了。”——在这句子里,“现在”、“道歉”等词都不难译,全句唯独“非……不可”这一虚词短语需费心经营,也许可以这样表达:“*All you can do now is to offer apology to her.*”又如“在舆论压力下,他们非让步不可”,则可用另一种表达法:“*Under the pressure of public opinion they will have no alternative but to yield.*”此外,这“非……不可”,还可根据不同的上下文,用其他不同的方式来表达,例如:“*have no choice but*”,“*have no option but*”,“*have just got to*”,“*be bound to*”等等。本书对这一虚词短语就收了十三种之多,分别用不同例句来表示其不同特色,读者可根据自己的需要去选用。

以上几例足以说明虚词的译法有多么重要和变化多样,因为虚词简直是句中的骨干,解决了这一部分,其他也会迎刃而解。所以无论是从事中译英或以英文写作的读者,都十分重视虚词的表达。

何谓虚词

要给虚词下一定义相当困难，这是汉学家长久争论不休的一个问题。有人认为：一个句子里，那些主要成份是实词，非主要成份则是虚词。这样去区分似乎过于简单。汉语句法十分简练，有时很难说得清楚何者系主要成份，何者属于非主要成份。因此，本书指的虚词是广义的，举凡形容词、副词、前置词、连词、语气词以及其短语，都归入虚词，其中，本手册尤其注重虚词短语的选择和表达，诸如“按理”、“简直”、“鉴于”、“横竖”、“巴不得”、“极其量”、“怪不得”、“忽而……忽而”、“与其……不如”、“一方面……(另)一方面”等等，都尽量收入。

本书特点

1. 句式、例句多种多样：计虚词和虚词短语之句式共收 450 多个，不同的翻译形式所收的例句约 3200 个，平均每一句式有七种不同译法的例句，有的多达三十多种，与一般汉英词典比，同一条目，本手册往往多若干种，甚至多若干倍。

2. 例句尚实用而富趣味性：三千多个例句全部是整句，有骨有肉，便于使用者体味各种表达的特点和区别。内容侧重日常生活，文字力求生动活泼，饶有兴味。英译则求其合乎惯用法，尽量体现原文的实质和韵味，下面试举数例：

你真想跟我合作也行，不过这摊子非由你出面主持不可。——
If you really want me to team up with you on this, you *simply must* boss the show.

到头来，他惹了一身麻烦。—— He *ended up* landing himself in hot water.

她那身打扮时髦得不得了。—— She was dressed *in the height of* fashion.

她的情绪忽而高忽而低，这就叫她的男朋友忽而高兴忽而灰心。—— The *alternations* of her mood are the joy and despair by *turns* of her boyfriend. / She is always blowing hot and cold, and this *in turn* makes her boyfriend rejoice and despair.

警方终于查出那个暗地里操纵毒品贩卖的人。—— The police

finally found out the man who was *behind the drug scene*.

3. 注释简明,有助理解和运用:对英语的一些习惯用法,必要时作一些注释或说明,俾对初学者有所帮助,例如“暗地里”的译法,有 *on the quiet*, *behind closed doors*, *behind the scene*, *on the sly*, *underhand* 等十种之多,大都分别简明注出含义的不同,如第一个注侧重“偷偷地”或 *in confidence* 之意;第二个注含“关起门来”之意;第三个注侧重“幕后操纵”之意;第四个注含贬义,有 *deceitful* 之意;第五个注含贬义,带欺骗之意,等等。又如“值得”一注,较为详尽,为一般词典、语法书所无。

4. 检字方法简单,使用方便:既可按汉语拼音,也可按条目笔画检字。后者编排十分简便,只须数出条目头一个字的笔画便得,如要查“非……不可”,可数“非”的笔画,即八画,再查“条目笔画索引”的八画部分,即可找到条目所在页码。

使用对象

本书主要供翻译工作者、教师、中学和大专学生以及工商各界使用英语的人士参考。

对英语程度不高,如中学生或初学翻译的人士,不论对练习翻译或造句、作文都颇有帮助;就是对水平较高的专业人士也起到启发的作用,譬如“一点儿”,共收三十九种不同表达方式,除 *a little*, *a bit of* 等常用的以外,还有 *a small token of (affection)*, *a morsel of (food)*, *a shade (better)*, *a streak of (humour)*, *(don't care) a whit / a damn / a fig*, *(don't sleep) a wink*, *a speck of (interest)*, *a shred of (evidence)*, *(don't have) the remotest (idea)...*。

衷心感谢

我在此要感谢我太太 *Magnolia*, 她对全书的编排、选词、英译等方面都提出过许多有益的意见;最后而又最吃重的抄打工作,全部由她一人完成,这真是一项耗费精力、耐力和体力的工程;但最大的帮助还是她给我的不断鼓励,没有她,这本书是不可能面世的。

黄邦傑 (Ian Wong)

一九八四年十月于香港

目 录

写在北京版之前	I
前言	1
条目笔画索引	1
汉英虚词句式	1—198
附录: Empty Words	199

条目笔画索引

一画: 一般	155	二画: 几乎	72
一半	155	几分	78
一边...一边...	155	十分	125
一旦	156	十足	127
一点儿	156	三画: 才	22
一定	158	大半	30
一度	159	大不了	30
一方面...(另)		大大(的)	31
一方面...	159	大都	31
一概	161	大方	31
一共	161	大概	32
一会儿	161	大好	32
一...就...	162	大量	33
一口气	163	大体上	33
一连	163	大约	34
一律	163	大致	34
一面...一面...	163	凡是	43
一身	163	干脆	49
一时...一时...	164	马上	105
一条龙似的	164	千万	117
一下	164	万分	142
一样	164	万一	142
一一	165	也罢...也罢...	154
一再	166	也好...也好...	155
一直	166	也许	155

2 彙目笔画索引

与其…不如…	175	从前	29
之后	181	从速	29
之内	181	从头(儿)	30
之前	181	反而	44
之所以	181	反正	45
四画: 巴不得	4	反之	45
比	7	分明	48
比较(地)	10	公开(地)	54
不啻	13	公然	54
不但…而且…	13	互相	70
不但…反而…	14	及时	75
不得不	14	仅仅	86
不定	15	井井有条	92
不断(地)	15	井然	93
不妨	16	历来	102
不管…(都)…	16	仍旧	122
不见得	17	仍然	122
不禁	18	日趋	122
不仅	18	日益	122
不仅…而且…	19	为此	144
不久	19	无不	145
不…就…	19	无从	145
不料	20	无妨	146
不论	20	无非	146
不能不	20	无怪乎	146
不然	21	无论	146
不要紧	21	无论如何	146
不致于	22	尤其	175
从…到…	27	五画: 白(白地)	5
从而	28	本来	6
从来	28	本着	7

必然	11	只不过…(罢了)	184
必须	12	只得	184
出于	24	只管…(好了)	185
对半	41	只好	185
可	100	只是	185
立即	102	只要	185
立刻	103	只有…(才)	187
另外	104	主要	191
未了	110	左右	198
目前	110	六画: 百般	6
宁可	112	毕竟	11
平常	114	并且	12
平时	115	此外	26
平昔	115	当初	35
丝毫	132	当即	36
外加	140	当面	37
未必	143	当然	37
未免	144	多半儿	41
以…(为)	167	多次	42
以便	168	多方	42
以后	168	多亏	42
以内	169	而今	43
以前	170	而且	43
以上	170	仿佛	46
以外	171	份外	48
以往	171	刚才	50
以下	172	刚刚	51
由于	175	刚好	51
正当	180	刚巧	52
正好	181	各半	52
正巧	181	共同	54

关于	57	全都	119
过度	58	全力	119
过分	58	全面	120
过头	59	全然	120
过于	59	如果	123
好不	61	如今	124
好不容易才	61	同时	137
好歹	62	同样	137
好端端	62	向来	150
好好(的、地)	63	许多	151
好赖	63	迅速	152
好容易才	63	因此	172
好像	64	因而	173
好一个(一条,一 朵,一幅…)	64	因为	173
好在	64	有关	175
合乎	64	约莫	177
后来	68	再加	179
尽管	86	再三	179
尽可能	88	再…也没有了	179
尽快	88	早先	179
尽量	89	至迟	187
尽早	89	至多	187
尽先	89	至今	188
尽力	90	至少	188
尽情	90	至于	189
决然	99	七画: 别是	12
论	104	但凡	35
岂不是	116	纷纷	47
岂但	116	否则	48
岂非	117	更加	53
		还是	59

何必	65	到头来	38
何不	66	的确	40
何尝	66	顶多	40
何等	66	非…不可	46
何妨	67	非常	47
何苦	67	该	48
何况	67	姑且	55
即便	75	固然	56
即刻	75	怪不得	56
即令	75	果然	57
即使	75	忽而…忽而	69
极了	78	忽…忽…	69
极其	78	忽然(间)	70
极其量	78	或许	71
进一步	91	近乎	91
究竟	95	经常	92
连	103	径直	93
连连	103	径自	93
连忙	104	居然	98
没想到	106	…来着	101
每当	106	明明	108
每逢	106	其次	116
免不了	107	其实	116
免得	108	实际上	127
彻头彻尾	121	实在	128
时常	125	始终	129
时而…时而…	129	事后	129
似乎	132	事前	130
完全	140	事实上	130
八画: 单单	34	事先	130
到底	37	素来	132

6 条目笔画索引

所以	134	急切	77
宛如	141	急于	77
往常	142	既然	79
往往	142	既…又…	79
委实	143	将近	83
详尽(地)	150	结果	86
详细	150	绝对	99
些微	150	看来	100
些许	150	看样子	100
幸好	151	哪怕	111
幸亏	151	哪儿	111
依旧	167	恰好	117
依然	167	恰恰	117
直到	183	恰巧	117
终究	190	前后	118
终于	190	轻轻(地)	118
九画: 按理	2	轻易(地)	119
按理说	2	是否	130
按说	2	首先(…其次)	131
按照	2	虽然	132
背地里	6	突然(间)	138
差不多	23	显然	146
差不离	24	相当	147
除非	25	相等	147
除了	25	相对(地)	147
恨不得	68	相反	148
恍如	70	相仿	148
恍若	71	相继	148
浑身	71	相近	149
急急忙忙	76	相似	149
急忙	76	相像	150

要不(然)	153	…得不得了…	39
要不是	153	第一…第二…	40
要么…要么…	153	断然	41
要是	153	敢情	49
怎么	179	够	55
总归	192	毫不	60
总算	192	毫无	60
十画: 罢了	5	基本上	73
倒是	38	基于	74
赶紧	50	假定	80
根本	52	假如	80
借以	86	渐渐	82
恐怕	101	接连	84
莫不是	109	竟然	94
莫非	109	据	98
莫过于	110	猛然	107
难道	112	偏	113
难怪	112	偏偏	113
难免	112	偏巧	114
难以	112	随便	134
殊不知	131	偷偷地	138
谁知道	132	惟独	143
索性	135	唯有	143
倘若	135	十二画: 就	95
特别	135	就…而论	97
特地	136	就是…也…	97
徒然	139	屡次	104
原来	176	确实	121
原先	177	然而	121
值得	182	稍稍	125
十一画: 常(常)	24	稍微	125

8 条目笔画索引

稍许	125	鉴于	83
痛快	138	满	105
越…越…	177	满意	105
暂时	179	碰巧	113
最	193	频频	114
最初	193	想不到	150
最多	194	愈…愈…	176
最好	195	愈加	176
最好是	196	十四画:竭力	85
最后	196	截然	85
最近	198	慢慢	106
最晚	198	十五画:横竖	68
十三画:暗地里	1	十六画:整整	180
暗中	4	十七画:藉此	75
简直	80		

暗地里 àndìlǐ

1. 她暗地里把什么都告诉了他。
secretly
She told him everything *on the quiet*.
(on the quiet 侧重“偷偷地”，或含 in confidence 之意。)
2. 人们暗地里都在议论这事。
People are talking about the matter *behind closed doors*.
(behind closed doors 含“关起门来”之意。)
3. 警方终于查出那个暗地里操纵毒品贩卖的人。
The police finally found out the man who was *behind the drug scene*.
(behind the scene 含贬义，侧重“幕后操纵”之意。)
4. 那小男孩暗地里经常抽烟。
The small boy often smoked *on the sly*.
(on the sly 含贬义，有 deceitful 之意。)
5. 他们到了礼拜天便暗地里相会。
a) They met *in secret* on Sundays.
b) They used to have *secret rendezvous* on Sundays.
6. 学生暗地里都恨那老师态度粗暴。
The students *silently* (or, *inwardly*) hated the teacher for his harshness.
(silently 和 inwardly 侧重“内心”，“不露形色”之意。)
7. 他们暗地里活动，以反对这次的选举。
They started *clandestine* activities against the election.
(clandestine 无贬义，侧重“秘密地去做”之意。)
8. 很显然，他们在暗地里捣鬼。
It's obvious that they are playing *underhand* tricks.
(underhand 含贬义，带欺诈之意。)
9. 经理和那漂亮的打字员暗地里勾搭的事已是公开的秘密。
It's an open secret that the manager is *having an affair* with the pretty typist.

密。

(have an affair with somebody 指“男女偷情”。)

按理 ànlǐ

1. 按理，你应给弟弟们作个榜样，可事实上你反而不如他们。

as things should be

You *really should* have set a good example to your brothers, but in fact you aren't as good as they are.

2. 按理，北京十二月就该下雪，可今年却迟迟不下。

a) Snow is *normal* weather for December in Peking, but there hasn't been any this year.

b) *Normally* snow is common in December in Peking, but it's late this year.

3. 按理，他这人应出人头地才是，可不知为什么，就是起不来。

A man like him *ought to* stand out among his fellows, and yet he failed somehow.

4. 现在已经六点半了，按理，你六点就应该到。

It's *already* six thirty. But you *were supposed to* be here at six.

5. 按理，这公园礼拜天总是挤满人的，可今天老下雨，所以游人就少了。

Generally speaking, the park is always full on Sundays, but it's been raining all day today, so very few people have come.

按理说 ànlǐshuō

见“按理” ànlǐ p.2

按说 ànshuō

见“按理” ànlǐ p.2

按照 ànzhào

according to, on the basis of (参阅“本

着” bēnzhe 条) p.7

1. 双方按照对半的原则投资。
The capital was invested by both sides on a 50/50 basis.
2. 中国今后还会按照平等互利的原则制订和实行一些法令。
China will enact and administer more laws and decrees on the principle of equality.
3. 无论按照任何标准来衡量,这都是一个了不起的成就。
By any measure, it is a monumental achievement.
4. 小说的主人公是按照一个历史人物塑造的。
The hero of the novel was modelled in the light of (or, was based on) a historical figure.
5. 他们按照职员们的贡献,分别给以奖励。
They awarded the staff according to their contributions.
6. 他决定按照原来制订的计划行事。
He decided to act in accordance with the original plan.
7. 我们将按照计划,五月份去日本。
a) We'll leave for Japan in May as planned.
b) We are scheduled to leave for Japan in May.
8. 请按照所附清单把样品寄来。
Please send us the samples as per list attached.
(as per 相当于 according to, 一般用于商业函件。)
9. 要是按照我的意思,我准让他贴着墙站,然后开枪打死他。
If I had my way, I'd stand him up against a wall and shoot him.
10. 按照我的话去做,不要耍鬼。
Do what I say and don't get smart!
11. 法官总是按照是非
Judges always decide a case on its

- 曲直来判案的。
12. 按照我的认识，首先要注意贷款的经济效果。
So far as I can judge, primary attention should be paid to the economic effect of the loan.
13. 按照这个进度，我想月底可以完成这项工程。
At this rate of progress, I think we can complete the work at the end of the month.
14. 按照我的看法，这次的交易对我们分外有利。
In my estimation, it is an exceptional bargain.
15. 按照我的看法，他干这个最合适不过了。
To my thinking, he is the right person for the job.

暗中 ànzhōng

见“暗地里” àndìli p.1

巴不得 bābude

1. 经过一段流浪生活，他巴不得回到家乡。
After leading a vagrant life, he was too glad to get back to his home town.
2. 电视正播送一场激动人心的足球赛，班上的男孩巴不得马上就下课。
A most exciting football game was on the TV, and the boys were all itching for the lesson to end.
(itch for sth. 本身含有“心痒难熬”之意。)
3. 那小女孩说：“我巴不得能跟我姐姐去参加化妆舞会呢！”
The little girl said: “How I wish I could go to the fancy-dress ball with my sister!”
4. 到了旅行那天，那男孩子四点钟就醒了，巴不得天马上就亮。
When the day for the trip came, the boy woke up at four and was anxious that the day would break at once.

5. 我真巴不得有这么一天呢!

I'm really *looking forward to* such a day!

(look forward to 相当于 anticipate, 含盼望之意, 往往指愉快的事, to 是 preposition, 不能接原动词。)

罢了 bàle

语气词, 表示不过如此, 常与“不过”、“就是”连用, 有时表示容忍, 此时“了”读 liǎo 音。

1. 这不过是个借口罢了。
2. 别怪他, 他不过是个孩子罢了。
3. 这孩子不坏, 就是有点贪玩罢了。
4. 冷倒也罢了, 就是这活儿太烦人。
5. 不肯也罢了, 他犯得着发这么大的火吗?

It's *nothing but an excuse*.

(nothing but 其实是“只不过...罢了”之意。)

Don't blame him. He is *only* a child.

He isn't a bad boy. Just a bit too fond of play, *that's all*.

I don't mind the cold; it's just that the job itself is very annoying.

He *might as well* refuse, but it wasn't worth getting angry like that.

(might as well 其实是“不妨”之意。)

白(白地) bái(báidi)

in vain, fruitless

1. 他白(白地)跑了一趟。
2. 咱们这算是白给他干了。
3. 我们不应白白地度过这一生。
4. 你真不该这样子让时光白白地过去了。

a) He made a *fruitless* trip.

b) He went on a *wild-goose chase*.

So we did all this for him *for nothing*.

We shouldn't live our lives *in vain*.

You really shouldn't *fritter away* your time like this.

5. 他现在渐渐明白，求她嫁给他，简直白费力气。
Now he has come to know that it is like *beating the air* to ask her to marry him.

百般 bǎibān

1. 他们对那百万富翁百般奉承。
They played up to the millionaire *in every possible way*.
2. 他显然有罪，但他仍然为自己百般开脱。
It was obvious that he was guilty, and yet he tried *by hook or crook* to plead for himself.
(by hook or crook 这是个短语, 含贬义, 有不择手段之意。)
3. 他们百般刁难, 不让她上大学。
They put up *all sorts of obstacles* to bar her from entering university.
4. 她对他百般辱骂。
a) She *showered* (or, *heaped*) abuse on him.
b) She drenched him *in a torrent of* invective.
c) She *drowned* him *in* vituperation.
5. 那位年轻护士对病人百般照顾。
The young nurse *showed every consideration* for the patient.

背地里 bèidìli

见“暗地里” àndìli p.1

本来 běnlái

- 语气词, 常用虚拟语气 (Subjunctive Mood) 表达。
1. 你本来就不该这样做。
You should never have acted the way you did.
2. 你本来就用不着这样生气。
You needn't have got so angry.
3. 我们本来以为他不
We thought he wouldn't come, but he

来，可他还是来了。

did.

4. 这幅画本来就是一件赝品。

The painting was a forgery *in the first place*.

5. 他在上海的时候本来是个理发师。

He *used to be* a barber when he was in Shanghai.

6. 一个童子军本来就应该又勇敢又诚实。

It goes without saying that a boy scout should be brave and honest.

7. 这本来是件小事。

It is a small thing *in itself*.

(*in itself* 即“就其本身而言”之意，故可转译为“本来”。)

本着 bēnzhe

in accordance with (参阅“按照” ànzhào 条) p.2

1. 本着友好的愿望，双方达成了协议。

With the desire to promote friendship on both sides, they reached an agreement.

2. 两个企业本着互利的原则进行贸易。

The two enterprises do business with each other *on the basis of* mutual benefit.

3. 他们本着原先拟订的计划行事。

They acted *in accordance with* what they had originally planned.

4. 本着公报的精神，两国进行了一连串的联系。

In line with the spirit of the communique, the two nations came into a succession of contact with each other.

5. 人们当初就是本着她的地位对她加以培养的。

She was trained *in conformity to* her position.

比 bǐ

1. 乔治比妹妹高一个

a) George is a head taller than his sis-

- 头。
2. 乔治比妹妹大五岁。
3. 二年级比三年级多两个班。
4. 本月生产的电视机将比上月增加百分之二十。
5. 中国一九八〇年商品销售量比一九七九年大幅度增加, 约多二百亿元。
6. 你的房子比我的大一倍。
7. 你的房子比我的大两倍。
- ter.
- b) George is taller than his sister *by a head*.
- a) George is *five years older than* his sister.
- b) George is *older than* his sister *by five years*.
- c) George is *five years senior to* his sister.
- d) George is *five years his sister's senior*.
- There are two *more* classes in the second year *than* in the third year.
- a) This month we'll produce *20% more* TV sets *than* we did last month.
- b) TV sets being produced this month will increase by *20% as compared with* last month.
- China's sales volume of consumer goods in 1980 showed a sharp increase of nearly 20 billion yuan *over* 1979.
- a) Your house is *100% larger than* mine.
- b) Your house is *twice as large as* mine.
- c) Your house is *double the size of* mine.
- a) Your house is *twice* (or, *two times*) *larger than* mine.
- b) Your house is *twice* (or, *two times*)

- the size of mine.*
- c) Your house is *three times as large as mine.*
8. 这城里的学校现在比一九五〇年多八倍。
- a) There are now *nine times as many schools in this town as there were in 1950.*
- b) There are now *eight times more schools in this town than in 1950.*
9. 艾丽丝打网球比乔治好。
- a) Alice is *a better tennis player than George.*
- b) Alice plays tennis *better than George does.*
10. 作为一个学者,你比他强;在人情世故方面,你就比不过他了。
- You are *more of a scholar than he is, but you have got less worldly wisdom.*
11. 他比其他学生都高明一些。
- He is *a notch above the other students.*
12. 她在我们班里比其他女生都强。
- She is *a cut above (or, a notch higher than) the other girls in our class.*
13. 他的英文比其他学生好多了。
- a) He is *head and shoulders above the other students in English.*
- b) He is *far superior to the other students in English.*
14. 在讲授语音学方面,当年没有人比得过丹尼尔·琼斯。
- a) As a lecturer on phonetics, Daniel Jones had *few superiors.*
- b) Few could *equal Daniel Jones in lecturing on phonetics.*
15. 人们认为女人在长跑方面绝不比男人差。
- It's believed that woman is by no means *inferior to man in long-distance run.*

16. 跟你比起来, 我们的成就简直算不了什么。
Our achievement is nothing in comparison with what you have done.
17. 乔治画的画比其他
人画的强多了。
George's drawing is by far the best.
18. 比赛的结果是二比一。
The final outcome of the game was 2:1 (two to one).
19. 现在的分数几比几?
What's the score?
20. 乔治在赌博方面比他哥哥强得多。
George outsmarted his brother quite a lot in gambling.
(与 outsmart 同类的词还有许多, 如 out-grow 一比……长得快; outlive 一比……活得长。)

比较(地) bǐjiào(dì)

1. 经历了千辛万苦之后, 他现在过着比较舒适的生活了。
Having gone through every hardship, he now lives in comparative ease.
2. 比较地说, 他今年进步更大了。
Comparatively speaking, he has made greater progress this year.
3. 他现在可以比较冷静的回答问题了。
Now he could answer the questions with relative coolness.
4. 今天比较冷。
It's rather cold today.
5. 我觉得这事情比较棘手。
I found it somewhat difficult.
6. 听说她目前生活得比较富裕。
I hear she is now quite well-off.
7. 他两个儿子在学校的
成绩都不错; 比较地, 小儿子似乎
更好一些。
Both his sons are doing quite well in school, but the younger one seems to be a bit better.

毕竟 bìjìng

1. 他毕竟是刚出校门, 没有经验, 所以你不要对他抱太大希望。
2. 他的病毕竟太重了, 恐怕治不好。
3. 他并不爱她, 但在父母压力下, 毕竟跟她结了婚。
4. 他不见得很能干, 但毕竟还是能对付这个局面的。

after all

After all, he is just out of school and green, so you mustn't expect too much of him.

His illness, in the last analysis, is probably too serious to cure.

He didn't love her, but under the pressure of his parents married her nonetheless. (or, but nevertheless married her under parental pressure.)

He may not be very capable; still, he can handle the situation. (or, but he can still handle the situation.)

必然 bìrán

1. 他是必然要来的。
2. 像他这样一个学生, 把大家的脸都丢尽了, 那是必然要轰出校门的。
3. 他所抱的希望必然会变成失望。
4. 赌博的结果必然使他走上毁灭之途。
5. 生活放荡的人必然是没有好下场的。
6. 生活费用增加了, 是不是工资必然会增加呢?

certainly, inevitably

He is sure to come.

A student like him, who had brought disgrace on us all, was bound to be kicked out of school.

a) *His hopes are doomed to disappointment.*

b) *His hopes are doomed.*

The outcome of gambling brought him to inevitable ruin.

People who lead a dissolute life are certain to come to a bad end.

Do raising costs necessarily mean higher wages?

必须 bìxū

1. 情况危急, 你必须去一趟。
2. 钱不多了, 你必须省着点花。
3. 你要想练好提琴, 就必须下苦功夫。
4. 小孩子必须听父母的话。
5. 学生必须严格遵守校规。
6. 我们每月必须在银行储蓄一些钱。

must; have to

The situation is desperate, and you *simply must* go.We haven't much money left, so you *have to* go easy on it.You *can't* play the violin well *without* making painstaking efforts.Children *ought to* obey their parents.*It's imperative* for every student to strictly observe school regulations.*It's necessary* that we should lay aside some money to put into the bank every month.

别是 biéshì

1. 他这会儿还不回来, 别是车子出毛病了吧?
2. 电影还有几分钟就开演了, 别是她又迟到了。
3. 他昨天没露面, 别是他太太从美国回来了吧?

maybe; possible

He isn't back yet. *Perhaps* his car has broken down.The movie will begin in a few minutes. It's *likely* she'll be late again.He didn't show up yesterday. *Maybe* his wife has come back from the States.

并且 bìngqiě

1. 他很聪明, 并且很谨慎。
2. 他很高, 并且很壮。

and; also; moreover

He is very bright *and, moreover,* very careful.a) He is tall *and also* strong.b) He is tall, *and* strong *as well*.

- c) He is quite tall *and* very husky too.
 d) He is husky *as well as* tall.
 3. 我们当时已经累得走不动了, 并且还下着雨。
 We were then too tired to go any further; *besides* it was raining.

不啻 bùchī

- not less than; as good as
 They treat me *like* kith and kin.
 1. 彼等待我, 不啻亲人。
 They are *as inseparable as* fish and water.
 2. 彼等之关系, 不啻水鱼之亲。
 His debts *amount to* (or, *are no less than*) 10,000 dollars.
 3. 彼所负债, 不啻万金。
 These home-made TV sets are *as good as* those from abroad.
 4. 本国制之电视机, 不啻舶来之品。
 The car was bought last year, but it looks *as good as* new.
 5. 此汽车虽是去年所购, 然外观不啻全新。
 (as good as 意为“等于”、“宛如”、“实际上是”。例如: He is as good as dead. 一他一如死人。)
 6. 借钱与他, 不啻投钱入海。
 You *might as well* throw your money into the sea as lend it to him.
 (might as well ... as 直译是“这样做是有道理的, 就像那样做一样”。might 在这里不是过去时态, 而是一种虚拟语态, 因为“投钱入海”这种事是不可能发生的, 这种句型也有用 may 的, 那是指可能发生的事。)

不但……而且 bùdàn...érqiě

- not only ... but also
 1. 他不但是个科学 He is *not only* a scientist *but also* a

- 家，而且是个诗人。 poet.
2. 此事不但与我有关系，而且与你也有关系。 It concerns *not only* me *but* you *as well*.
3. 现在散步，不但太晚，而且天也开始下雨了。 a) It's too late for a walk now; *besides*, It's beginning to rain.
b) It's *not only* too late to go for a walk, it's *also* begun to rain.
4. 我不但不能去，而且也不愿意去。 I cannot go, and *what's more*, I don't want to go.
5. 新生不但学英语，而且也选修法语。 The new students are taking French, *in addition to* English.

不但……反而 bùyàn...fǎn'ér

见“反而” fǎn'ér p.45

不得不 bùyé bu

have no choice but, cannot but

1. 他不得不跟那女孩子结婚。 He had *no choice but* to marry the girl.
(have no choice but 表示没有选择的余地。)
2. 她不得不把真情告诉我。 She *could not but* tell me the truth.
3. 天快黑下来了，我不得不走了。 It's getting dark. I *must* be going now.
4. 为了照顾病残的母亲，她不得不放弃那个工作。 She *had to* give up her job in order to look after her invalid mother.
5. 他不得不跟他言归于好。 *There was no alternative* for him *but* to make it up with her.
(no alternative but 表示无选择余地。)

6. 为了维持纪律, 我不得不说她。
I was *obliged to* reprimand him for the sake of discipline.
(be obliged 表示有责任这样做。)
- 不得了 bùdéliǎo
desperately serious
1. 这事简直不得了!
It's really *terrible*. (or, *awful, outrageous, disastrous*.)
2. 这事没什么不得了
的!
a) It's all right, nothing *serious*.
b) Nothing very *earth-shaking*, I think.
c) There is nothing really *serious*.
- 不定 bùdìng
not sure; maybe
1. 你不打算请她? 恐怕你就是请, 她还不定来哩。
You won't invite her? I'm afraid, even if you do, *it's hard to say* whether she'll come.
2. 像他这种人, 下次还
不定会出什么事哩。
I really don't know what will happen to a man like him next time.
3. 这些数字收集得还不够,
不定会有什么分析的价值。
The data is insufficient, and *can't be said* to have much value for analysis.
4. 他不定接不接受这
建议哩。
It's by no means (or, *It's not at all*) *certain* that he'll accept the proposal.
- 不断(地) bùduàn(di)
unceasingly; constantly
1. 近几个月来, 物价
不断上升。
a) Prices have gone up *continuously* in the last few months.
b) Prices have been boosted *time and again* in the last few months.
2. 她不断地抱怨别人
不肯帮她。
She is always complaining that nobody is willing to help her.

- (用进行式加 always 表示“不断”，含不以为然之意。)
3. 细雨濛濛，不断地下了三天。 It drizzled *unceasingly* for three days.
4. 问题不断地出现。 Problems have *cropped up one following the other*.
5. 好消息不断传来。 Glad tidings came *on top of each other*.
6. 他的健康不断地恶化。 His health is getting *steadily worse*.

不妨 bǔfāng

- might as well
1. 你不妨给她写封信。 *There is no harm in* your writing her a letter.
2. 关于这件事，你不妨去跟他谈一谈。 You *may as well* go and have a talk with him about the matter.
(may as well 实际上是 may as well ... as, 见“不啻” bùchì 条的注。在这里,后面的 as 省去了,写全了是 you may as well go as not, 意即“你去与不去都可以, 不过还是去好。”))
3. 时间晚一些倒也不妨, 他们说过要等我的。 *It doesn't matter* how late it is; they said they would wait for me.
4. 落点价钱倒也不妨, 只要做成这笔买卖就好。 We could cut down the price a bit, so long as you agree to settle the deal.

不管……,(都)…… bùguǎn ... (dōu)

- no matter what (how, who, when ...)
1. 不管出了什么事, 我们都要保持镇定。 a) *No matter what* happens, we must keep calm.

- 静。
2. 不管是谁传的谣言, 都不应该相信。
3. 不管怎样, 你还是听从他的劝告为好。
4. 无论如何, 我都要试试。
5. 在你的帮助下, 不管有多大困难, 我们都能克服。
6. 不管你多努力, 你也不会成功的。
7. 不管天气如何, 我准定来。
8. 不管多么疲劳, 她一直在努力工作。
9. 不管这家多么寒酸, 那还是自己的家好。

b) *Whatever* happens, we must keep our heads.

a) You shouldn't believe the rumour, *no matter who repeats it.*

b) *Whoever* repeats the rumour, don't believe it.

You had better follow his advice, *in any case.*

a) *At all events*, I'll try.

b) I'll try, *come what may.*

With your help, we can overcome all difficulties, *however great.*

Try as you may, you will not succeed.

I'll come in all weathers.

She has been working hard, *oblivious of all fatigue.*

Be it ever so humble, there is no place like home.

(Be it 是古英语的虚拟语态, 含让步的意思, 现在可改为 let it be. Ever so 等于 very. 这两句原出自英国诗人 John Howard Payne (1795—1852) 的名诗 “Home, Sweet Home”。)

不见得 bù jiànde

unlikely

1. 富家子弟不见得就

Children brought up in well-to-do

有出息。

families may not necessarily be promising.

2. 他不见得会跟她结婚。

He is *not likely* to take her as his wife.

3. 他不见得会来参加这个会。

It's *hard to say* whether he will come to the meeting.

4. 他不见得就接受这个建议。

It's *not at all certain* that he will accept the proposal.

不禁 bùjīn

can't help doing something

1. 她看了他的信，不禁哭了起来。

a) Having read his letter, she *couldn't help* crying.

b) After reading his letter, she *couldn't restrain* her tears.

2. 听了那个笑话，他们不禁大笑起来。

a) They *could not help but* laugh after hearing the joke.

b) They laughed at the joke *in spite of* themselves.

c) They *couldn't help laughing* at the joke.

d) They *couldn't refrain from* laughing at the joke.

e) They *burst out laughing* on hearing the joke.

3. 他发现自己中了她的圈套，不禁大为恼火。

He *exploded with wrath* (or, He *flew into a rage*; or, He *flared up*; or, He *blew his top*) when he found he had been taken in by her.

不仅 bùjīn

not only

1. 有这个想法的人不

a) I am *not alone* in thinking that.

仅我一个。

b) I am *not the only* person who shares this view.

2. 不仅这个，他还经常捣鬼。

And not only that (or, *And besides*; or, *And that's not all*), he also often plays dirty tricks.

不仅……而且 bùjīn ... érqiě

见“不但……而且” bùdàn ... érqiě

p. 13

不久 bùjiǔ

soon; before long

1. 我们不久就要离开这儿上日本去。

We will leave for Japan *before long*.

2. 这次吵架只不过为了一件小事，所以他们不久就和好了。

The quarrel was only about a trivial matter; so they made it up *very soon*.

3. 吃完晚饭不久，他就开始修理沙发椅。

Not long after (or, *Soon after*) he had finished his supper, he set about repairing the sofa.

4. 春节不久就要到来。

The Spring Festival *is drawing near*.

不……就 bù ... jiù

either ... or

1. 不是你就是他错了。

a) *Either* you are wrong, *or* he is.

b) One of you is wrong, if you aren't, he is.

2. 他不来，我就去见他。

If he doesn't come, I'll go to see him.

3. 不投降就得死，你看着办吧！

Surrender or die. It's up to you!

不料 bùliào

1. 电影开映不到十分钟,不料就停电了。
2. 我们原先都认为他的计划不会有什么结果,不料,他到底成功了。
3. 我们不过是开玩笑,不料她竟信以为真。

unexpectedly

Hardly had the movie been on for ten minutes when electricity was cut off *unexpectedly*.

We all thought he wouldn't get anywhere with his plan, but *to our surprise*, he actually made it.

We were only joking; *who would have thought* she would take it seriously.

(这里用虚拟语气表达“不料”。)

不论 bùlùn

1. 不论你要做什么事,也不论你是在家还是在学校里做,都要尽力而为。
2. 不论是什么书,你要拿就拿。
3. 只要有钱,不论是谁都能去周游世界。
4. 本区居民,不论男女老幼都参加了国庆活动。

no matter what (who, where ...)

No matter what you try to do, at home *or* at school, you should do your very best.

(这里第二个“不论”,译作 *or*)

Take whatever books you want.

Anybody can go and travel round the world, as far as he can afford it.

All the residents in the district, man, woman *or* child, took part in the celebration of National Day.

不能不 bùnéng bù

1. 这样一种暴行不能不引起公愤。
2. 不能不指出这种行

have to; cannot but

Such an atrocity *can hardly* escape arousing public indignation.

It *must* be pointed out that such

为是无法忍受的。

3. 你年纪越来越大，而他对你又一直很好，所以你不能不现实一些。
4. 从证据看，我们不能不认为他犯了谋杀罪。

behaviour is intolerable.

You are getting older, and he has always been nice to you. So you *have to* be realistic.

a) From the evidence, we *cannot but* conclude that he is guilty of murder.

b) In view of the evidence, we *must* conclude that he committed murder.

不然 bùrán

1. 快一点，不然你就晚了。
2. 你还是听他的话好，不然，你会惹麻烦的。
3. 坚持下去，不然你就要失败。
4. 幸亏有你帮忙，不然我就得丢面子了。

otherwise

Hurry up, *or* you'll be late.

You had better take his advice, *otherwise* you'll get into trouble.

Hold out, *or else* you'll fail.

a) *But for* your help, I should have lost my face.

b) *If it hadn't been for* your help, I should have lost face.

不要紧 bù yào jǐn

1. 录音机出了点小毛病，不过也不要紧。
2. 工资少也不要紧，她可是自食其力。
3. 干下去！我不要紧。
4. 你这么说好像不要紧，可他甩手就不

it doesn't matter; unimportant

There is something wrong with the tape-recorder, but it's *nothing serious*.

It doesn't matter how small a salary she gets; she earns her own living.

Go ahead! *Never mind* me.

Though what you said seemed *unimportant*, it made him throw up his

干了。

5. 你这一哭不要紧，
可把你妈妈急坏了。

job.

You may think it's all right for you to cry, but it really upset your mother.

不至于 bùzhìyú

1. 我看他不至于干这种事吧。
2. 我想事情不至于那样。
3. 你当初要好好用功的话，就不至于不及格了。
4. 我想形势还不至于像你说的那样糟糕。

be unlikely

I don't think he will go so far as to do such a thing.

Things won't turn out that way, I hope.

If you had worked hard enough, you wouldn't have failed in the examination.

The situation may not be so dreadful as you say.

才 cái

1. 他才走，你就来了。
2. 你怎么才动手干？
3. “你到了多久啦？”
——“才几天。”

语气词

I. 表示事情刚发生过：

a) *He had just left when you arrived.*

b) *You came just after he left.*

Why didn't you start a bit earlier?

-- “How long have you been here?”

-- “*Only for a few days.*”

II. 表示条件：

The boy never goes to bed until he has finished all his homework.

1. 那男孩总是把功课全都做完了才去睡觉。

He said he would come only if you agreed.

2. 他说你同意了他才来。

III. 表示对比的数量偏小或偏大：

1. 她出嫁时才十六岁。 She was only sixteen *when* she (got) married.

2. 他到了五十岁才结婚。 He didn't get married *until* fifty.
(如果说“他要到五十岁才结婚”，则属表示“条件”的第二类，应译为 He won't get married until fifty.)

IV. 表示加强语气:

1. 他要不知道才怪呢! a) I'd be *really* surprised if he didn't know!

b) *I'll be damned* if he didn't know!

2. 我才不给他干呢! I won't do it for him *for all the world*.

3. 他才不是什么学者呢! He is *far from* a scholar.

4. 我才不在乎呢! I don't *give (or, care) a damn!*

差不多 chàbuduō

almost; nearly

1. 现在差不多六点。 It's *almost (or, nearly)* six o'clock.

(强调“快到”六点了; 如说 It's *about [or, around]* six o'clock, 则可能是“不到”或“超过”。)

2. 他们的年纪差不多一样。 They are *about* the same age.

3. 这两本书内容差不多。 The two books are *similar* in content.

4. 我昨天晚上差不多一夜没睡。 I *hardly* had a wink of sleep last night.

5. 这摩天大楼差不多盖成了。 a) The skyscraper is *as good as* completed.

b) The skyscraper is *nearing* completion.

6. 她差不多有七十了。
 a) She is *approaching* seventy.
 b) She is *close upon* seventy.
 c) She is *getting on* for seventy.

差不离 chàbulí

见“差不多” chàbuduō p. 23

常(常) cháng(cháng)

frequently; often

1. 他常来信吗?
Do you *often* hear from him?
2. 我在广州的时候, 常去看她。
I used to see a *lot of* her when I was in Canton.
3. 他们常常上学院附近那个咖啡馆。
a) They *frequented* the cafe near their college.
b) They go *regularly* to the cafe near their college.
4. 这样的事常常发生。
This is *quite a common* occurrence.
5. 我晚上常在家。
I'm *usually* at home in the evenings.

出于 chūyú

out of; due to

1. 出于好奇, 我问他当初为什么出家当和尚。
Out of curiosity, I asked why he had decided to become a monk.
2. 出于无奈, 她终于嫁给了那个有钱的老头子。
There being no alternative, she finally married the rich old man.
3. 她完全是出于自愿而停止吸毒的。
She gave up taking drugs *all of her own accord*.
4. 在战时, 人们给伤员捐血都是出于自愿。
In war time people used to donate blood for the wounded *on a voluntary basis*.
5. 出于不可告人的目
With ulterior motives he played up to

的，他对那富有的
老姑娘百般奉承。

the rich old maid in every possible
way.

除非 chúfēi

unless; only when

1. 除非你坐的士去，
不然准赶不上火
车。

You will miss the train *unless* you
take a taxi.

2. 除非加劲干，你才
能成功。

You *may* make it *only if* you try hard
enough.

3. 你除非穿上雨衣，
否则就得淋湿。

You had better put on your raincoat,
otherwise you will get wet.

(*otherwise* 虽是“否则”，但使上句暗含“除非”
之意。)

4. 我除非不写这篇
文，要写就准得写
好。

a) I'll write the composition well *if*
I write it *at all*.

b) *Either* I write the composition well,
or I don't write it *at all*.

5. 若要人不知，除非
己莫为。

If you don't want people to know, you
had better not do it.

除了 chūle

except; besides

1. 除了他，谁也写不
出这么美的一首
诗。

Nobody *except* him can write such a
beautiful poem.

2. 他除了教书，晚上
还在一个公司兼
职。

Besides teaching, he works for a com-
pany in the evening.

3. 除了英语，她还讲
法语。

She speaks French, *in addition to* Eng-
lish.

(*in addition to* 含有“除…外，还有…”之
意。)

4. 除了英语, 他其余的功课都得了满分。
With the exception of English, he got full marks in all the subjects.
 (with the exception of 是“除…外, 其它的都…之意”)
5. 除了字典, 一共有 一百多本书。
There are more than one hundred copies of books, not including (or, apart from) dictionaries.
6. 他除了买三件衬衫, 还买了两条领带。
He bought not only three shirts but two ties as well.
 (but ... as well 相当于 but also, 本身为“而且也”之意, 从而使前句隐含“除了”的意思。)
7. 除了这个法子以外, 我恐怕帮不上你的忙了。
I don't think I can help you in any other way than this.
 (other than 中的 than, 可用来表达“除了”的意思。)
8. 除了几个行人以外, 街上是空荡荡的。
There were only a few pedestrians, otherwise the street was deserted.
 (otherwise 在这里作“除此以外”或“在其它方面则”解。又如 The rent is high, but otherwise the house is satisfactory. — 这房子除了房租贵一些以外, 其它方面都令人满意。)

此外 cǐwài

1. 他能说英语, 法语和德语, 此外, 还能说一点日语。

besides; in addition to

- a) He speaks English, French and German, *in addition*, he can speak a little Japanese.
- b) He speaks English, French and German, *in addition to* a little Japanese.

(第一句是个并列句, *in addition* 修饰 *can speak*, 后跟一个句子, 第二句是个简单句, *in addition to* 修饰 *speaks*, 后跟一个 *prepositional phrase*.)

2. 她弹钢琴, 此外, 也拉提琴。

a) She plays the piano, *and* the violin *as well*.

b) She plays the violin *as well as* the piano.

(在 *A as well as B* 的结构中, 重点在 *A* 而不在 *B*; 而在第一句的 “...*A and B as well*” 的结构中, 则重点在 *B* 而不在 *A*.)

3. 我们干这个活的人手不够, 此外, 现在正是雨季。

We didn't have enough hands for the job; *besides*, it's a rainy season.

4. 他很有学问, 此外, 人也很谦虚。

He is a great scholar, *moreover*, very modest.

5. 他劳累过度, 此外, 营养也不足, 所以就病倒了。

What with overwork *and* undernourishment he fell ill.

(*what with ... and* 这一介词短语句型, 在句子里起表原因的状语作用。为“由于”、“半因...半因...”之意。上句英语也可改为: *What with* overwork *and what with* undernourishment, he fell ill.)

从……到…… cóng ... dào ...

from ... to ...

1. 警察从头到脚打量着他。
2. 她从早到晚干家务活, 一点怨言也没有。

The policeman scrutinized him *from top to toe* (or, *from head to foot*).

She drudged at her housework *from morning till night* and made no complaint.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 3. 人类从生到死都在奋斗。 | Man is striving <i>from the cradle to the grave</i> . |
| 4. 这家企业的职员, 从上到下, 每人到了年底都分到一份花红。 | Each staff member of the enterprise, <i>from the higher levels to the rank and file</i> , had his share of the bonus at the end of the year. |
| 5. 这些礼节从古到今就是如此。 | The ceremonies have been handed down <i>from time immemorial</i> (or, <i>from antiquity, from ancient times to present</i>). |

从而 *cóng'ér*

thus; thereby

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. 我又给她解释了一遍, 从而避免发生误会。 | I explained once more to her, <i>so as to</i> avoid any misunderstanding. |
| 2. 交通拥挤时发生了事故, 从而耽误了时间。 | An accident happened in a traffic jam, <i>thus</i> causing the delay. |
| 3. 由于超级大国奉行战争边缘政策, 从而引起目前国际局势的紧张。 | The present international tension <i>results from</i> the brink-of-war policy of the superpowers. |
| 4. 香港电子工业目前正在欣欣向荣, 不少企业从而获得厚利。 | Hong Kong is having a great boom in electronics industry, and a great many enterprises reap big profits <i>thereby</i> . |

从来 *cónglái*

always; at all times

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 1. 他们夫妇从来相处都很和睦。 | The couple had <i>always</i> got on well with each other. |
| 2. 他们从来就很友 | They have been on friendly terms <i>all</i> |

好。

along.

3. 我从来没听说过这种事。

I have *never* heard of such a thing *before.*

4. 我从来没抽过烟。

I have *never* smoked.

5. 我从来不抽烟。

I *never* smoke.

从前 cónɡqián

before; in the past

1. 我从前没见过她。

I've never seen her *before.*

2. 她从前在上海是个中学教员。

She *used to be* a middle-school teacher when she was in Shanghai.

3. 从前有一个国王，名叫米达士。

Once upon a time, there lived a king, whose name was Midas.

4. 这支歌从前很流行，现在可没人唱它了。

This song was *once* very popular, but nobody sings it today.

5. 他从前跟我共过事。

He is a *former* colleague of mine.

6. 他还是跟从前一样和蔼可亲。

He is genial *as of old.*

7. 那边的一位女士就是乔从前的太太。

The lady over there is Jo's *ex.*

8. 她是我从前的同班同学。

She is an *old* classmate of mine.

从速 cóngrù

as soon as possible

1. 陪审团认为罪犯应从速处决。

The jury held that the criminal should be dispatched *without delay.*

2. 账目必须从速结算。

The account must be settled *as soon as possible.*

3. 我们愿看样品，务请从速寄来。

We would like to see the sample. Please send them to us *at your earliest convenience.*

- 从头(儿) cóngtóu('er) from the beginning
1. 你最好从头儿做起。
You had better *start from the very beginning*.
 2. 这次没做好,咱们从头儿再来吧。
We didn't make it this time. Let's *start all over again*.
 3. 她戒赌戒毒,下决心从头儿生活。
She gave up gambling and drug-taking, and *made up her mind to start a new life (or, to turn over a new leaf)*.

大半 dàbàn

- I. 表示很可能— very likely; most probably
1. 这一对儿大半是吹了。
The couple has *most likely* broken up.
 2. 这事情他一个人大半是办不来的。
Most probably he won't be able to tackle this by himself.

II. 表示大部分,大多数— more than half

1. 美国的农民大半是种自己的地。
Most farmers in the States are the *owners of the land they till*.
2. 他们的讨论大半都话不对题。
Their discussions, *for the most part*, were irrelevant.

大不了 dàbuliǎo

at the worst

1. 大不了把钱还给他就是了。
At the worst, I shall have only to pay him back the money.
 2. 大不了我不管这件事就是了。
If the worst comes to the worst, I'll wash my hands of it.
- a) In my opinion, there is *nothing very earthshaking*.
b) In my opinion, it's *nothing serious*.

大大(的) dādà(de)

1. 他是我大大的朋友。
2. 她自己得了冠军，就大大的骄傲起来了。
3. 经过艰苦奋斗，他们大大的提高了产品的质量。
4. 杂志将大大的增加篇幅。
5. 我没有考虑他的建议，他便大大的发了一通脾气。
6. 你要是想周游世界，那就要大大的花钱了。
7. 新政策大大的推动了国际贸易。
8. 只要你掌握好机会，你就能大大的赚钱。

greatly

He is a *great* friend of mine.She has *grown too big* for her boots since winning the championship.Through painstaking efforts, they have *much* improved the quality of their products.The magazine will be *greatly* enlarged in number of pages.He *flared up* (or, He *flew into a rage*) when I turned down his suggestion.It will cost *a good lot* if you want to travel round the world.The new policy gave an *enormous impetus* to international trade.If you can grasp a golden opportunity, you'll reap *fat* (or, *handsome, gross, fair*) profit.

大都 dàdū

参阅“大半” dàbàn 条 II p. 30

大方 dàfāng

generous; natural; tasteful

1. 他出手很大方。
2. 她虽出身寒门，举止却落落大方。
3. 她衣服的式样大都

He is *generous* (or, *liberal* or, *free*) with his money.Although she came from a needy family, she *carried herself with ease and grace* (or, she has an *easy manner*).Most of her dress styles are *in good*

- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| 很大方。 | <i>taste.</i> |
| 大概 dàgài | probably; generally |
| 1. 他现在大概看完了那本书了。 | He has probably finished that book by now. |
| 2. 她大概不来了。 | a) She is not <i>likely</i> to come.
b) She is <i>probably</i> not coming. |
| 3. 这不过是个大概的分析。 | It's only a <i>general</i> analysis. |
| 4. 我大概估计了一下, 这工作有三个月就能完成。 | On a <i>rough</i> estimate, I think the work can be completed in three months. |
| 5. 你最好还是给我一个大概的数字。 | It would be best if you gave me an <i>approximate</i> figure. |
| 6. 这路程大概得走两天。 | It's a two-day journey, <i>more or less</i> . |
| 7. 她大概是个教师。 | She is a teacher <i>or something</i> . |
| 大好 dàhǎo | excellent |
| 1. 电子工业今年前途大好。 | Electronics industry has <i>boundless</i> (or, <i>brilliant</i>) <i>prospects</i> this year. |
| 2. 他是个具有大好前途的青年。 | a) He is a youth <i>full of promise</i> .
b) He is a youth <i>with bright prospects</i> .
c) He is a <i>highly</i> (or, <i>well</i>) <i>promising</i> youth. |
| 3. 只要你掌握大好时机, 你就能得到巨大的利润。 | If you can grasp a golden opportunity, you'll reap handsome profits. |
| 4. 他善于利用大好形势。 | He is always good at making use of a <i>good</i> situation. |

- 大量** dàliàng a great quantity
1. 纺织厂贮存了大量的羊毛。
The textile mill is having a *great* (or, a *large*) *quantity of wool* in stock.
 2. 她每年都在衣着上花费大量的金钱。
She spends a *considerable* (or, *huge*, *immense*, *large*) *amount of money* on dress every year.
 3. 你应该做大量的室外运动。
You should take *plenty of* (or, a *great deal of*) *outdoor exercise*.
 4. 这书店备有大量的英文小说。
The bookstore *keeps a rich stock of* (or, *carries a large stock of*) *English novels*.
 5. 我发现她床边放着大量的侦探小说。
I found a *large number of* *detective stories* by her bed.
 6. 她在这方面收集了大量的第一手资料。
She has collected a *great mass of* (or, a *vast amount of*) *first-hand data* on the subject.
 7. 军队正在前线大量结集。
Troops are being *massed* on the front.
 8. 大量事实证明他是幕后操纵者。
A *heap of* (or, a *host of*, a *lot of*) *facts* showed he was the man who pulled the wire.

- 大体上** dàtǐshàng on the whole
1. 他刚才说的话大体上是对的。
On the whole what he had said is right.
 2. 这两封信的字迹大体上相似。
The handwriting in the two letters is *about* the same.
 3. 这儿的景色大体上很悦目。
The view here, *for the most part*, is pleasing.
 4. 到城里去的这条路大体上是好的。
The road to the city is good *in the main*.

5. 周末到他家来串门的人大体上都是老人。
People who drop in on weekends are largely old folks.
6. 我给他大体上讲了我的计划, 他很细心地听, 可什么话也没说。
I outlined my project to him. He listened attentively but said nothing.

大约 dàyuē

1. 银行离这儿大约有
两站那么远。
The bank is at a distance of about two bus stops from here.
2. 我等了大约有半个
钟头。
I've waited for half an hour or so.
3. 她大约已经回家了。
She has probably gone home.
4. 今天太闷热, 大约
要下雨。
The weather is stifling. It looks like rain.
5. 她大约是不来了。
She's not likely to come.
6. 大约有一天的路程。
It's a day's journey, more or less.
7. 这个问题我目前大
约解决不了。
I may not be able to solve this problem at present.

大致 dàzhì

见“大体上” dàtǐshàng p. 33

单单 dāndān

only; alone

1. 我们都弄着了马戏票, 单单他没有。
We all got tickets for the circus except him.
2. 他怎么单单挑那天去呢!
Of all days he went that day!
3. 为什么有那么多的候选人, 单单选中他当主席呢?
a) Why did people elect him chairman, of all the candidates?
b) With so many candidates to choose

4. 单单靠爱情是维持不了生活的。
 5. 单单为了你，我也愿意作出牺牲。
 6. 在这件事情上头，不应该单单怪你一个人。

from why did they elect him chair-
man?

One cannot live on love *alone*.

I will make sacrifices *solely* on your
account.

In this matter you shouldn't be the
only person to blame.

但凡 dānfán

1. 但凡要车子用，他都来找我。
 2. 但凡是你喜欢的就拿去好了。
 3. 但凡昨天没上学的学生，教师逐个问明原因。
 4. 但凡有点办法，他也不会麻烦我们。
 5. 但凡看过这小说的人，都为主人公的悲惨命运所感动。
 6. 但凡在场的人，无不为他的笑话所绝倒。

in every case; without exception

Whenever he wanted to use the car, he
came to me.

Take *whatever* you like best.

The teacher required an excuse from
every pupil, *without exception*, who had
been absent the previous day.

If there were any way out, he would
never trouble us.

Anybody who has read this novel will
surely be moved by the bitter fate of
the hero.

People present *all* split their sides with
laughter at his joke.

当初 dāngchū

1. 当初这里原有一个树林子。
 2. 这里当初原是个学

at that time; originally

There was a wood here *at that time*.

There *used* to be a school here.

校。

3. 当初本想在星期五开会。
The meeting was *originally* fixed for Friday.
4. 他还是住在当初那个地方。
He still lives in the same place.
5. 这种事情当初就不应该做。
Such a thing should never have been done *in the first place*.
6. 早知今日，何必当初。
a) Knowing how things would turn out, why did you/he do it in the first place?
b) If I had known it would come to this, I would have acted differently.

(in the first place 作“本来”、“原先”解。)

(汉语的这个谚语既可用于自身，表示自怨自艾，如 b 句，也可用于对方或第三者，表示责怪，如 a 句。)

当即 dāngjí

- at once; without delay
1. 我接到她的电话，当即去看她了。
When I got her call, I went to see her *at once* (or, *right away*).
2. 她求他帮忙，他当即就答应了。
He promised to help *the moment* she turned to him.
3. 受伤者当即送往医院。
The wounded were sent to the hospital *without delay*.
4. 警方发现歹徒藏身之所后，当即采取行动。
When the police spotted the hideout of the gangsters, they took *immediate* action.
5. 骑兵奉命，当即出发。
a) The cavalry started *as soon as* they received the order.
b) The cavalry were ordered to set off *on the instant*.

当面 dāngmiǎn

to somebody's face; in somebody's present

1. 我们最好当面把账算清。
2. 他当面把辞职书交给了经理。
3. 他不喜欢人家当面捧他。
4. 我想跟你当面谈谈。

We had better settle the accounts *face to face*.

He sent in his resignation to the manager *personally*.

He doesn't like to be flattered *to his face*.

I would like to *have an interview with you*.

(have an interview with 实际上是“约见面谈”或“采访”之意，往往指顾主与求职者、记者与被采访者一类的接见或会见。)

当然 dāngrán

见“自然” zìrán p. 191

到底 dàođǐ

I. 表示终于、最后—— finally; at last

1. 瞧，他到底来了。
2. 他俩到底还是言归于好了。
3. 我想她到底会回心转意的。
4. 他这人做事老那么犹豫不决，不知将来到底会怎么样。

Look, here he comes *at last*.

Finally they shook hands and made it up.

I think she'll come round *in the end*.

He is a shilly-shally sort of man, and *who knows* what the future has in store for him.

II. 表示强调

1. 说吧，你到底要干什么？
2. 都十一点了，他到底回不回来？
3. 到底是谁告诉你的？

Tell us, what *exactly* do you want to do?

It's already eleven. Is he coming back or not?

Whoever told you that?

III. 表示毕竟——after all

参考“毕竟”bìjìng 条 p. 11

1. 别说他了, 他到底是个孩子嘛。

Don't blame him, *after all*, he is only a child.

到头来 dàotóulái

in the end; finally

1. 我敢说, 到头来他会倾家荡产的。
2. 到头来, 他把事情弄得一团糟。
3. 有关选举作弊的调查, 到头来毫无结果。
4. 到头来他惹了一身麻烦。
5. 他那粗心大意的态度到头来铸成了大错。

I'm sure he'll ruin himself *in the end*.

Finally he made a mess of the whole thing.

The investigation of the election frauds *ended up in smoke*.

a) He *ended up* landing himself in hot water.

b) He got into great trouble *at last*.

His carelessness *resulted in* a serious blunder.

倒是 dàoshì

语气词

I. 表示尽管如此

1. 我倒是知道这件事, 可就是不能告诉你。
2. 他倒是真穷, 可穷得硬气。
1. 你说你很了不起, 我倒是要看一看。
2. 你能出差到意大利

It's true I know about the matter, but I just can't tell you.

Poor as he is, he always holds his head high.

II. 表示不满或羡慕

You say you're good at everything; *I'd like to see* how good you are.

It's wonderful that you can take a

去一趟，倒是满不错的。

business trip to Italy.

1. 别老站在那里傻笑了，你倒是再试一回呀！

III. 表示催促

Don't plant yourself there and giggle all the time. You *had better* try it again.

(had better 本作“最好还是”解，含建议之意，与“倒是”意近似。)

2. 你倒是说说，你这样做是什么道理。

You may as well explain why you did it.

(may as well 本意是“不妨”，在这一句里，与“倒是”相通。)

1. 别人都想尽办法推托，她倒是大大方方地站出来唱了。

IV. 表示意想不到

While the others tried to find all sorts of excuses, she stepped out and sang with perfect ease.

(“倒是”的语气可以从“while” clause 的结构中带出。)

2. 蛋糕虽然烤得不好，他倒是挺喜欢吃的。

The cake was badly baked, but he liked it *all the same*.

(all the same 本意“还是”，“仍然”，与“倒是”之意不完全相同，这里只能借用。)

…得不得了… débùdéliǎo

extremely; exceedingly

1. 他终于收到她的第一封信，心里高兴得不得了。

When he finally received her first letter, he was *wild with joy*.

2. 他在火辣辣的太阳下走了很长的路，感到疲乏得不得了。

Having walked a long way under a scorching sun, he was now *overcome with fatigue*.

3. 听了他那番甜言蜜语，她感动得不得

She was *deeply moved* by his sweet-talk.

了。

4. 他小时候家里穷得不得了。
When he was a child, he lived in the most abject poverty.
5. 老夫妇的感情好得不得了。
The old couple is exceedingly affectionate towards each other.
6. 她那身打扮时髦得不得了。
She was dressed in the height of fashion.
7. 她小时候难看得不行了。
She was as ugly as could be when she was young.
8. 我口渴得不得了。
I am as thirsty as may be.
(as ... as can [may] be 是一种加重口气的表达法。)

的确 díquè

really

1. 这害处的确比我原来想的要大。
The harm is really greater than I thought.
2. 他当时对她的确很好。
He was indeed very nice to her.
3. 她的确决定了今年不结婚。
She did decide against getting married this year.
4. 我的确一点也不了解这件事。
In truth, I don't know anything about this.
5. 今天的功课的确不容易。
The homework for today is by no means easy.

第一……第二…… dìyī ... dì'èr ...

见“首先(……其次)”

shǒuxiān (.....qí'cì) p. 131

顶多 dīngdū

参阅“大不了” dàbuliǎo p. 30

断然 duànrán

1. 那是断然办不到的。
2. 他的邀请受到对方断然的拒绝。
3. 他们认为这些条件是断然无法接受的。
4. 到了这紧要关头，他们只好采取断然措施。

absolutely

That *simply* won't do!His invitation met with a *flat* refusal from the other side.They found these conditions *absolutely* unacceptable.They had to adopt *decisive* measures at the critical moment.**对半** duìbàn

1. 他把蛋糕对半切开。
2. 他哥俩合伙经营，对半分红。
3. 如果赚到钱，咱俩就对半分。
4. 我说不准你是否能成功，因为成败的可能性是对半的。

half-and-half

She cut the cake *in half* (or, *into halves*).The two brothers teamed up on business and split the profits *half-and-half* (or, *down the middle*).If we get any profit, we will *go halves*.I can't say whether you'll make it, because the chances are *fifty-fifty*.**多半儿** duōbànr

1. 她多半儿是不会接受你的邀请去参加那舞会的。
2. 看样子他今天晚上多半儿是不会来的。
3. 他多半儿是不会跟她结婚的。

I. 表示很可能——most likely

It is *more than likely* that she will not accept your invitation to the ball.It seems most *probable* that he isn't coming tonight.It isn't *likely* that he will marry her.

II. 表示大部分、大多数——more than

1. 班上的男孩子多半儿都喜欢足球。
2. 那出戏多半儿是挺沉闷的。

half

Most of the boys in the class like football.

The greater part of the play was dull.

多次 duōcì

见“屡次” lǚcì p. 104

多方 duōfāng

in many ways; all manner of

1. 他显然是犯了罪，但他多方为自己开脱。
2. 警察多方探听匪窟的所在。
3. 他们看到她落到这样一个可怜的田地，便多方帮助她。
4. 邮差多方设法，把那封地址错误的信投递给收信人。

It was obvious that he was guilty, and yet he tried by hook or crook to plead for himself.

The police made every effort to locate the thieves' den.

When they found her in such a wretched plight, they rendered all manner of help.

The postman did everything possible to get the wrongly addressed letter to the recipient.

多亏 duōkuī

thanks to

1. 多亏有她的帮助，他总算渡过这难关了。
2. 他多亏有这么一位贤内助。
3. 多亏一早就出门，这才赶上了火车。

Thanks to her help, he finally managed to tide over the difficulty.

a) *He is lucky (or, fortunate enough) to have such a good wife.*

b) *He is fortunate in having such a good wife.*

It's lucky we started early and were able to catch the train at the last min-

ute.

而今 érxīn

见“如今” rújīn p. 124

而且 érqǐě

参阅“不但……而且” bùdàn ... érqǐě
p. 13

1. 她不仅美丽而且聪明。
2. 他很高，而且也很壮。
3. 那新来的办事员很聪明，而且也很谨慎。
4. 你一定要告诉我这个秘密，而且马上就说。

She is not only pretty, *but also* intelligent.a) He is tall, *and* strong *as well*.b) He is quite tall, *and* very husky *too*.The new clerk is very bright *and moreover*, very careful.You must let me share the secret, *and that* at once.

(and that 是一种加强语气的用法, that 实际上是代表 let me share the secret, 说全了就是 You must let me share the secret, and let me share it at once.)

凡是 fánshì

every; all

1. 凡是参加周末旅行者,请在此签名。
2. 凡是在这一带居住的人都认识他。
3. 凡是他的朋友都躲着他。
4. 凡是她要的,他全都给了她。

Those who want to take part in the week-end excursion please put down their names here.*Everyone* in our neighbourhood knows him.*All* his friends deserted him.a) He gave her *whatever* she asked for.b) He gave her *everything* she wanted.

5. 凡是值得做的，都值得好好去做。
Whatever is worth doing at all is worth doing well.
6. 凡是对社会有好处的事他都乐意去做。
He is always ready to do anything that benefits the community.
7. 凡是坚持真理的人，总是无所畏惧的。
Generally those who stick to the truth have nothing to fear.

反而 fǎn'ér

1. 他本以为我们会上当，可是吃大亏的反而他。
He thought we would be taken in, but on the contrary, it was he who got shorn.
2. 他说的话不但帮不了他什么忙，反而把事情弄得更复杂了。
What you said not only won't help him much, but will make things more complicated instead.
3. 他们不但没有支持他，反而拆了他的台。
Not only did they fail to support him as they should have, they cut the ground from under his feet instead.
4. 人太多了，对我们的工作不但没有帮助，反而使工作无法顺利进行。
Our work is hindered rather than helped by having too many people.
5. 太多了反而要坏事。
Too much of anything is good for nothing.
6. 越解释反而越糊涂。
The explanation only added to the confusion.
7. 虽然她表示了拒绝，他反而坚定了要赢得她的爱情的信心。
Her refusal only strengthened his determination in winning her love.

8. 自然之美,不修饰,
反而越美。 Natural beauty, when unadorned, is
adorned the most.

反正 fǎnzhèng

- 语气词,表示必然的结果。英语常结合 must, surely, anyhow, in any case 等词表达这一语气。
1. 不管你多累,反正
你得把活干完。 However tired you may be, you must
finish the job.
2. 反正事情已经无法
挽回,我们还是好
离好散吧。 Since matters are already irrevocable,
let's kiss and part.
3. 不管怎样,反正我
们必须跟他们对着
干。 In any case (or, Come what may), we
must meet them head-on.
4. 反正你这样做是不
会有什么结果的。 Anyhow, you won't get anywhere by
doing that.
5. 信不信由你,反正
你的计划要失败。 Believe it or not as you wish, but your
plan is bound to flop.

反之 fǎnzhī

- on the contrary; otherwise
1. 他不同意我的意
见,反之,我也不同
意他的意见。 He didn't agree to my proposal, and I
didn't agree to his *either*.
2. 我认为明天会下
雨,反之,她认为不
会。 I think it will rain tomorrow, *but* she
thinks *differently*.
3. 我们必须努力,反
之计划就会失败。 We must work hard, *otherwise*, we
won't get anywhere with the plan.
4. 我要是有困难,我
知道能指望得到你
的帮助,反之,你也
the other way around.

是如此。

仿佛 fǎngú

1. 他这人仿佛是个万事通似的。
2. 她哭得那么伤心，仿佛天塌下来了。
3. 仿佛我们都是傻瓜，就他一个人聪明似的！
4. 天空仿佛被一个黑幕遮住了。

seem; as if

- He *seems* to be a know-all.
- She cried so bitterly, *as though* the end of the world had come.
- As if* we were all stupid and he alone clever!
- The sky is covered, *as it were*, with a black curtain.

非……不可 fēi ... bùkě

1. 你要真想跟我合伙也行，不过这摊子非由你出面主持不可。
2. 在舆论的压力下，他们非让步不可。
3. 那女孩非常可爱，你非迷上她不可。
4. 真没料到事情会糟到这个田地，现在恐怕非接受他的条件不可了。
5. 现在，你非向她道歉不可了。
6. 他既然是发起人，

simply must; it leaves no alternative but

- If you really want me to team up with you on this, you *simply must* boss the show.
- Under the pressure of public opinion they will *have no alternative but* to yield.
- The girl is so charming that you *have no choice but* to love her.
- I never dreamt things would come to such a sad pass, and I'm afraid we *have no option but* to accept his terms.
- All you can do now is* to offer apology to her.
- Since he is the man who starts the

- 那他今天非到场不可。
7. 她昨天非要我跟她去看电影不可。
8. 我相信你能明白, 现在是非戒烟不可了。
9. 根据目前形势, 非马上解决这个问题不可。
10. 我今天醒得特别早, 午饭后非打个盹儿不可。
11. 我看这事不见得非你去干不可。
- thing, he *is bound to be present* today.
- a) Yesterday she *insisted on* my going to the movies with her.
- b) Yesterday she thought *I'd just got to go* to the cinema with her.
- I trust you *see the necessity of* giving up smoking now.
- The *present situation calls for* an immediate solution to the problem.
- I woke up very early this morning. *I've got to have* a little shut-eye after lunch.
- a) I don't think you are *the only person* to do the job.
- b) I don't think *it has to be* you who does the job.

非常 fēicháng

见“十分” shífēn p. 125

纷纷 fēnfēn

one after another

1. 他一进来, 大家纷纷起立, 向他表示欢迎。
2. 一九二七年, 地方军队纷纷起义, 反对北洋军阀。
3. 学生纷纷到医院给伤员输血。
- When he entered, people rose *one after another* to greet him.
- Regional troops rose *in succession* to revolt against the Northern Warlords in 1927.
- A large number of students *swarmed into* the hospital to donate blood to

4. 问题一时纷纷出现。
5. 土匪来了, 村民纷纷渡河而逃。
6. 他家里一听说他爱上这女孩子, 便纷纷议论起来。

the wounded.

Recently problems have cropped up one following the other.

When the bandits came, the villagers streamed across the river in flight.

When his family learned that he had fallen for the girl, they talked about nothing else for days.

分明 fēnmíng

见“明明” míngmíng p. 108

分外 fēnwài

particularly; all the more

1. 那天, 我们出发, 天气分外晴朗。

It was a *particularly* fine day when we set out.

2. 他分外喜欢流行音乐。

He is *especially* interested in pop music.

3. 谁也不愿告诉他出了什么事, 这使他分外恼火。

No one would tell him what had happened, and that vexed him *all the more*. (all the more 本身为“更加”“越发”之意。)

4. 这新洗衣机的质量分外优良。

The new washer is of *extra* best quality (or, ... of *special* quality, ... of *super-fine* quality).

5. 他对这门亲事分外高兴。

He was *more than* pleased with the marriage.

6. 正因为穷, 我才分外的喜欢他。

I love him *all the better* (or, *all the more*), just because he is poor.

否则 fǒuzé

见“不然” bùrán p. 21

该 gāi

语气词, 用于感叹句

1. 我这会儿要能见到

It would be wonderful if I could see

- 她,那该多好啊! her now.
2. 听到这消息,她该有多难受啊! What grief the news will bring her!
3. 当初要是有人提醒我该多好啊! If only I had been warned!
4. 老板对她的工作大发雷霆,这一次她该完蛋了。 The boss is furious with her work, and this time she is bound to be done for.

干脆 gāncuī

1. 她这人很干脆。 I. 表示“爽快”—— straightforward
She is *frank and straightforward*.
2. 他说话很不干脆。 He is always hedging.
3. 我们找他帮忙,他很干脆就答应了。 We went to him for help, and he promised it to us *readily*.
1. 她听了他说的话感到很生气,干脆走开了。 II. 表示“索性”—— simply
She took offence at his words and *simply* walked away.
2. 你既然答应了来,那就干脆早点来吧。 Now that you have promised to come, you *might as well* come earlier.
3. 干脆给你说实话吧,我不能接受你的建议。 To tell you the truth, I can't accept your offer.

敢情 gǎnqíng

1. “那小俩口快一个礼拜彼此不说话了”。 I. 表示“意想不到”—— unexpectedly
“The young couple hasn't been on speaking terms for nearly a week.”
“哦,敢情是这么回事!” — “Oh, is that so!”
2. 哼,敢情是你偷了我的钱包! Why, it's you who stole my purse!

1. 你考上港大啦? 那敢情太好了!
2. 你答应来啦, 那敢情不错!
3. “晚上去跳舞好吗?”
——“那敢情好!”

II. 表示“当然”—— of course; really
 You are admitted to Hongkong University? *Oh, that is good!*
 You've agreed to come. *That's wonderful!*
 “Shall we go to dance tonight?”
 “That's a good idea!”

赶紧 gǎnjīn

1. 他一收到电报便赶紧动身。
2. 接到他的电话, 她赶紧上飞机场去。
3. 他一到纽约, 赶紧给她写了封信。
4. 他听说那天是她的生日, 赶紧买了礼物送去。
5. 他们赶紧把她送医院去。
6. 好像要下雨了, 咱们赶紧回家吧。
7. 看到那满天黑云, 他赶紧带上雨伞。

hasten

As soon as he got the wire, he set off *at once*.

Upon receiving his call, she *hastened* to the airport.

The day he arrived in New York he *dashed off* a letter to her.

(dash off 含 write something quickly —— “匆匆写”之意。)

When he learned that it was her birthday, he *lost no time* in buying her a present.

(lose no time 相当于 at once, 后面往往限 in)

They sent her to the hospital *without delay*.

It looks like rain. Let's *hurry* home.

The clouded sky *prompted* him to take his umbrella.

刚才 gāngcái

1. 我刚才还听见她在

a moment ago

I heard her sing in the room just

屋里唱歌来着。

now.

2. 她刚才还在这里呢。

She was here *a minute* (or, a moment) *ago*.

刚刚 gānggāng

just; exactly

1. 她刚刚成年。

She is *barely* of age.

2. 月亮刚刚升起来。

The moon has *just* risen.

3. 我们刚刚吃完晚饭他就来了。

We had *hardly* finished our supper *when* he came.

4. 他刚刚离开家，天气就变了。

Scarcely had he left the house *when* the weather began to change for the worse.

(scarcely 与上条的 *hardly* 可以对换使用。)

5. 我们刚刚到家，就下大雨了。

a) *No sooner* had we got home *than* it began to pour.

b) As soon as we got home, it began to pour.

6. 火车刚刚进站。

The train entered the station *just now*.

7. 我在这儿刚刚呆了一个星期。

It's *exactly* a week since I've been here.

刚好 gānghǎo

just

1. 你来得刚好，舞会马上就要开始。

You've come *just in time*. The party will begin in a minute.

2. 牛油刚好够这顿早餐。

The butter is *just enough* for breakfast.

3. 领带刚好跟外衣配上了。

The tie goes *quite* well with the coat.

4. 这两者刚好一样。

The two are *exactly* the same.

5. 现在刚好是十二点。

It's twelve *on the dot*.

6. 结果刚好说明没花

The results *only* justified the expense.

冤枉钱。

7. 这双手套我戴着刚好。
This pair of gloves fits me nicely.
8. 天好像要下雨，不过我刚好带着雨衣。
It looks like rain, but *as it happens*,
(or, ... but it so happens that) I've
taken my raincoat along.
9. 我当时刚好也在那里。
It *chanced* that I was there too.
10. 我今天早上给他打过电话，他刚好外出了。
He *happened* to be out when I called
up this morning.

刚巧 gāngqiǎo

见“刚好” gānghǎo p. 51

各半 gèbàn

见“对半” duìbàn p. 41

根本 gēnběn

at all; thoroughly

1. 他根本就不愿意跟她出去。
He *simply* didn't want to go out with her.
2. 我看他眼里根本就没有我。
I don't think he takes me into account *at all*.
3. 别人对他有什么看法，他根本不在乎。
He *didn't give a damn* (or, He *didn't care a whit*) about what people thought about him.
4. 我根本就没有辞职的意思。
a) I have no intention *whatever* of resigning.
b) I have *not the least* intention of resigning.
5. 他在教学方面所以获得成功，根本在于耐心。
The *essence* of his success in teaching is patience.

6. 我们必须设法从根本上防止车祸。
We must find a *final* way of preventing traffic accidents.
7. 我必须告诉你, 这样做是根本不行的。
I must tell you *once for all* you will get nothing by doing so.
8. 她根本不知道这事。
She is in *total* ignorance with regard to the matter.
9. 自从我们上次访问以来, 这个城市已经发生了根本变化。
A *fundamental* change has taken place in this city since we visited it last.
10. 从根本上说, 自然资源对工业的意义至为重要。
Fundamentally speaking, natural resources are of the utmost importance to industry.

更加 gèngjiā

1. 哥俩的关系比以前更加疏远了。
Relations between the two brothers became *even more* estranged than before.
2. 他自从当了主任, 对这件事就更加重视了。
Since he was appointed director, he had taken the matter *still more* seriously.
3. 到了卅岁, 她显得更加漂亮了。
At the age of thirty, she looked *still prettier*.
4. 从此以后, 他们更加注意质量。
From then on they paid *greater* attention to quality.
5. 根据这些事实, 他们更加深入地进行调查。
With all these facts they went *further* into the investigation.
6. 孩子们还不知道母亲已经去世, 他现在对着他们, 感到
The sight of his children who did not even know their mother had died *added* to his grief.

更加悲痛。

7. 正因为他老实，我才更加喜欢他。 I like him *all the better* (or, *all the more*), just because he is simpleminded.

公开(地) gōngkāi(di)

openly

1. 你必须公开道歉。 You must apologize *in public*.
 2. 他公开地背叛家庭，和一个舞女结婚。 He *openly* forsook his family status and married a dancing-girl.
 3. 丑闻终于公之于众。 The scandal was finally *made known to the public*.
 4. 他们关系不好，这很快就公开化了。 The fact that they were *not on speaking terms* with each other soon *came into the open*.

公然 gōngrán

openly

1. 他公然欺骗了他的伙伴。 He betrayed his partner *openly*.
 2. 他们公然取消了合同。 They *brazenly* went back on their contract.
 3. 你要是敢公然蔑视舆论，那你就麻烦了。
 If you dare to set public opinion *at defiance*, you'll get into trouble.
 (defiance 本身就是 open disobedience 之意, 短语 in defiance of, set something at defiance, bid defiance to 都相类似。)

共同 gòngtóng

jointly; in common

1. 他们在施工期间共同配合得很出色。 They had very good *team-work in the course of construction*.
 (team-work 本意“协作” — combined effort).

2. 两国作出共同努力, 解决边界争端。
The two nations have made *joint* efforts to settle the boundary dispute.
3. 这两姊妹毫无共同之处。
The two sisters have nothing *in common*.
4. 吸毒已经成为人们共同关心的一个问题了。
Drug taking has become a matter of *common concern*.
5. 两国共同战斗, 以抵御共同的敌人。
The two nations fought *side by side* to resist their *common enemy*.
- 够** gòu quite; really
1. 像他这样的技工, 完全够得上工程师的资格。
A skilled worker like him is *quite* qualified to be an engineer.
2. 我们这一天的活儿可真够干的。
a) We are really *up to our eyes* in work today.
b) The job will surely *keep us busy* the whole day.
3. 今天可真够冷啊!
a) What ice-cold weather today!
b) It *really* is cold today!
4. 她可真够漂亮的。
She is pretty *enough*.
5. 这威士忌真够劲儿!
This whisky is *certainly* powerful stuff!
6. 这泡菜够味儿!
The pickle is *just the right flavour!*
- 姑且** gūqiě might as well
1. 我们姑且试试吧。
We might have a try, *anyhow*.
2. 根据你们的请求, 我们姑且把会推迟几天再开。
At your request, we *might as well* put off the meeting for a few days.
3. 他既然想跟你谈谈, 我们姑且推推吧。
Since he wants to have a talk with

你就姑且去见他一面吧。

you, I *don't see any harm* in going to see him.

固然 gùrán

1. 你做这计划固然花了三天时间，我还是认为不会有什么结果。
2. 他固然年纪不小，不过也不必像疯子似的去追女孩子。
3. 她固然很漂亮，可就是太冷，太傲慢了。
4. 这工作固然不易，不过我们还可以对付。
5. 犯错误固然不好，但死抱着错误不改就更坏了。

indeed

It's true that you have spent three days in drawing up the plan, but I'm sure you'll get nowhere with it.

Of course he is no spring chicken now, but he shouldn't run after the girls in such a crazy way.

She's *really* very pretty, but too cold and too haughty.

This is *indeed* no easy job, but still we can tackle it.

It is bad to commit a mistake, but it is far worse to cling to it.

怪不得 guàibude

1. 怪不得他今天起这么早，原来是要出远门。
2. 怪不得他今天早上没来，原来他儿子上美国，他送行去了。
3. 他把事情弄得一团糟，这就怪不得老

no wonder; so that's why

He was going on a journey. *So that was why* he got up so early this morning.

No wonder he didn't come this morning; he was seeing his son off to the States.

He made a mess of the job, and *that explains why* the boss was so angry.

板生气了。

4. 你既然不肯道歉，那就怪不得他这样说了。
As you would not make an apology, he was justified in saying this.

关于 guānyú

- as regards; with respect to
I've nothing to say *about* this matter;
1. 关于这件事情，我没什么可说的。
As regards the bonus, nothing has been decided yet.
2. 关于分花红的事，还没有作出决定。
3. 关于这个问题，我们必须谈一谈。
We must have a talk *as to* this subject.
4. 关于窃取银行款项的指控，我们知道奥·亨利是无辜的。
As for the charges of embezzling money from the bank, we know that O. Henry was innocent.
5. 关于风格，他口头比笔头好得多。
With respect to style, he spoke far better than he wrote.
6. 教授做了一个关于狄更斯的演讲。
The professor delivered a lecture *on* Dickens.
7. 关于这一点，我们以后还要更加详尽地讨论。
We'll discuss this point at more length later on.

果然 guǒrán

- really, indeed
1. 这酒果然妙得很！
The port is really marvellous!
2. 不错，他今天早上果然来过。
Right, he *did* come this morning.
3. 这果然是个十分棘手的问题。
It's *indeed* a difficult problem to tackle.
4. 果然他成了世界上
Sure enough, he became the greatest

最大的伪君子。

5. 果然不出观众所料，那位年轻的提琴家赢得了响亮的掌声。

hypocrite I've ever known.

Just as the audience expected, the young violinist won a storm of applause.

过度 guòdù

1. 他过度沉溺于声色，这就难怪他身子垮了。
2. 他最近过度沉湎于酒。
3. 干了一天累活，他感到过度疲劳了。
4. 听到那好消息以后，他显得有点过度兴奋。
5. 你不应过度溺爱孩子。

excessively

He was far gone in sensual pleasure, and that's why he wore himself down.

a) *He has been given over to excessive drinking recently.*

b) *He has been drinking without restraint lately.*

After a day's hard work, he felt overtired.

He seemed to be somewhat overexcited at the good news.

You shouldn't indulge the child too much.

过分 guōfèn

1. 这话说得太过分了。
2. 你这就太过分了。
3. 你的要求未免太过分了吧。
4. 你无须过分为她担心。
5. 她这人有点过分厉

excessively

Saying that is going too far.

You've gone too far.

Don't you think you have asked for too much?

You needn't worry too much about her.

She is a bit too aggressive.

害。

6. 你就是怎么夸她也不会过分的。 You can't praise her *too* highly.
7. 我信不过他。他这人过分聪明。 I can't trust him. He is *too* clever by half (or, *far too* clever.)

过头 guòtóu 见“过分” guòfēn p. 58

过于 guòyú

unduly; excessively

(参阅“过度”或“过分”条)

1. 他长途跋涉，后来因为过于劳累而病倒了。 After a long and arduous journey, he was *overtired* and fell ill.
2. 你是不是过于强调这一点了? Don't you think you've put *undue* stress on this point? (or, ... have overemphasized this point)
3. 我敢说这件事不致于使我们丢脸，你不必过于为我担心。 I can assure you that there is no disgrace to it. You don't have to worry *too much* about me.
4. 希望你不要过于悲伤。 We hope you won't carry your grief *to excess*.

还是 háishi

I. 表示“仍然” — still

1. 文章的风格并不十分优美，但文章本身还是很有意思的。 The article is not very elegant in style; *still*, it is very interesting.
2. 他虽然年纪小，但还是很有抱负的。 Young as he was, he was very ambitious.
3. 尽管他有一些缺点，我们还是很喜欢他。 Though there are some weaknesses in him, we like him *all the same*.

1. 你还是马上动身好。

2. 你还是去看看他吧。

1. 你要学英语还是法语?

2. 你要茶还是要咖啡?

1. 你还是真有两下子!

2. 他还是挺老实的。

毫不 háobù

1. 她一经改过自新,便对过去的生活毫不留恋。

2. 对于不合理的要求,我们毫不让步。

3. 他到这里来,我毫不觉得奇怪。

4. 我昨天晚上一点也没睡,可是今天也毫不觉得困。

5. 他对衣着毫不在乎。

6. 我毫不怪他。

II. 表示“最好是” — had better
You *had better* set off right away.

You *may as well* go and see him.

III. 表示“或” — or
Are you going to study English or French?

Which do you prefer, tea *or* coffee?

IV. 表示“确实” — really
You *really* are very smart!

He is *indeed* honest.

not ... at all

Having turned over a new leaf, she didn't yearn for the past *in the least*.

We will yield *nothing* to unreasonable demands.

I was not surprised at his coming *at all*.

I *didn't sleep a wink* last night, and yet I don't feel *the least bit* sleepy today.

He *doesn't care a whit* about his clothes.

a) *Far be it from* me to blame him.

b) I *don't blame him at all*.

毫无 háowú

not in the least

1. 他这人毫无大志。 a) He has *no ambition at all*.
b) He *isn't ambitious in the least*.
2. 她这话说得毫无道理。 What she said is *utterly unjustifiable*.
3. 采取这种新疗法, 你会感到毫无痛苦。 You can *be free from pain by taking* this new treatment.
4. 有关贿赂的调查毫无结果。 The investigation of bribery *ended up in smoke*.
5. 跟他说这事毫无好处。 It *won't be any good talking to him* about the matter.
6. 他对电视毫无兴趣。 He *doesn't care a whit* for television.
7. 我对这个问题毫无兴趣。 *I don't have a speck of interest in the* subject.
8. 他是个毫无廉耻的人。 He is a man *devoid of shame*.
9. 她这人毫无幽默感。 a) She is *absolutely devoid of a sense of* humour.
b) Her sense of humour is an *absolute zero*.

好不 hǎobù

语气词, 表示加强

1. 她这样说话, 叫人好不伤心。 It was *really* heart-rending to hear what she said.
2. 看着这样一个可爱的孩子, 心里好不喜欢。 *What a joy* to see such a charming child!
3. 这一招好不厉害! That's a *devastating* move!

好不容易才 hǎobù róngyì cái

not easy at all

1. 我们好不容易才跟他接上了头。
We went to a lot of trouble (or, went to great pains) to get in touch with him.
2. 他们好不容易才把病人救活了。
They had a hard time bringing the patient back to life.
3. 当妻子的好不容易才说服丈夫买了个新钻石戒指给她。
It took the wife a lot of time to get her husband to buy her a new diamond ring.

好歹 hǎodǎi

1. 他这人简直不知好歹。
He simply doesn't know what's good and what's bad for him.
2. 你怎么敢问他这样一个问题？真是不知好歹！
How dare you ask him such a question! You should have known how to behave yourself.
3. 万一他有个好歹，你我都得担关系。
You and I are to be held responsible if anything should happen to him.

II. 表示“无论如何”

— anyhow; at any rate

1. 我也知道这饼做得不好，你就好歹尝一尝吧。
I know the cake is not very good, but have a try, anyhow.
2. “太公放心，我好歹要救你女儿还你。”(《水浒传》)
“Don't worry, old man! At any rate, I'll save your daughter and return her to you!”
3. 不管怎么说，这好歹是辆新车子。
Say what you like; it's a new car.

好端端 hǎoduānduān

quite all right; in perfectly good condition

1. 好端端的，你垂头
Why are you so downcast while things

丧气的干什么? *look so promising?*

(《红楼梦》)

2. 好端端的哭什么呀? *Why on earth should you cry?*
3. 她昨天还是好端端的一个人, 怎么一下子就死了? *She looked perfectly well yesterday. How could she have died so quickly?*

好好的(的、地) hǎohǎo(dì)

I. 表示状况良好(参阅“好端端”条)

1. 别看他九十多岁了, 他还活得好好的哩。
Though he is over ninety, he is sound in wind and limb.
2. 谁把玻璃杯给砸了? 刚才还是好好的。
Who broke the glass? It was quite all right a moment ago.

II. 表示要尽力去做

1. 他们好好地接待了他。
They gave him a warm reception.
2. 他请我们好好的吃了一顿。
He stood a generous treat for us.
3. 我想跟你好好谈一谈这件事情。
I'd like to have a good talk with you over this business.
4. 这事情恐怕有鬼, 你得好好想一想。
There is something fishy about it. You must think it over carefully.

好赖 hǎolài

见“好歹” hǎodǎi p. 62

好容易才 hǎoróngycái

见“好不容易才” hǎobù róngyi cái
p. 61

- 好像** hǎoxiàng seem; as if
1. 两个小家伙好像又和好了。
The two kids *seemed* to become friends again.
 2. 天好像要下雪了。
It *looks as if* it'll snow.
 3. 他看上去好像是个运动员。
He *looks like* an athlete.
 4. 她好像很生气。
She *looks* very angry.
 5. 天空好像被一道黑幕遮住似的。
The sky was covered, *as it were*, with a black curtain.

好一个(一条、一朵、一幅……) hǎoyīge

I. 表示赞美

1. 好一个漂亮的小姑娘!
What a charming girl!
 2. 好一条汉子!
Quite a man!
- II. 表示挖苦, 轻蔑
1. 好一个大英雄!
A great hero, indeed!
 2. 哼, 好一个正人君子!
What, you are a gentleman?

好在 hǎozài

luckily

1. 好在我带着雨伞, 不然就得挨淋了。
Luckily, I brought my umbrella along, otherwise I would surely get wet.
2. 我动身前好在雨停了。
Fortunately the rain stopped before I started out.
3. 好在她最后赶上了火车。
She was *lucky enough* to catch the train at the last minute.

合乎 héhū

1. 你说的这一套不合乎事实。
Your story does not *tally with* (or, *accord with*) the facts.

2. 学生应合乎校规之要求。
The students are expected to *conform to* the school regulations.
3. 他在校的行为并不合乎他父亲的期望。
a) His *behaviour* at school did not *live up to* (or, *come up to*; or, *correspond to*; or *meet*) his father's expectations.
b) His *behaviour* at school *fell short of* his father's expectations.
4. 独裁主义并不合乎文明国度之需要。
Totalitarianism doesn't *suit* a civilized state.
5. 为了合乎顾客的需要, 新开的超级市场从世界各国进口商品。
In order to *meet* the need of the customers, the newly-open supermarket imports commodities from countries all over the world.
6. 这样做恐怕不合乎原来的安排吧。
a) I'm afraid this is *not in accordance with* the original arrangement.
b) I'm afraid it doesn't *agree with* the original arrangement.
7. 我想这不大合乎情理吧。
I can't say this is reasonable.

何必 hébì

- there is no need
1. 你要看电影就去好了, 何必这样大吵大闹的。
You can go to the cinema if you like. *There is no need* to kick up such a fuss.
2. 关于这件事情, 你完全可以自己作主, 何必问我呢。
As for this matter, you are entirely your own master. *Why* ask me?
3. 他既然不愿上大学, 那又何必硬逼着他上呢。
Will there be any use in trying to make him go, if college isn't what he wants?

何不 hébù

1. 既然他没时间来, 你何不去找他一趟呢?
2. 看来这计划不会有什麼结果, 你何不放弃了它呢?
3. 你何不跟她谈一谈?

why not

Since he doesn't have time to come, *why don't* you go to him?

It looks like you won't get anywhere with this plan, so you *had better* call the thing off.

a) *I don't see there is any harm in* having a talk with her.

b) *Why not* have a talk with her?

何尝 hécháng

1. 她何尝是高傲, 只不过生性不爱说话就是了。
2. 他艺术上的造诣何尝不高, 然而他的演奏就是吸引不了听众。
3. 他何尝不想成为她的男朋友, 但他知道他的门弟配不上她。
4. 我何尝不想上大学, 只是上不起罢了。

not that

Not that she is haughty, she is just of a taciturn disposition.

There was *no question* about his artistic attainments, but the music he played just can not hold the audience.

He would be only too glad to be her boyfriend, but he knew he couldn't match her in family status.

I'm *quite* willing to go to university; it's just that I can't afford it.

何等 héděng

1. 这是何等的慷慨啊!
2. 他是何等的伟大啊!
3. 这是个何等伟大的

How generous!

How great he is!

What a great man!

人物:

何妨 héfāng

1. 此事何妨一试。
2. 你何妨写封信问问他?
3. 宴会之前,你休息一下又何妨呢。

may as well

I don't think there is any harm in trying.
Why not write and ask him about it?
You may as well have a little rest before the banquet.

何苦 hékǔ

1. 你何苦为这小事费神呢。
2. 打破了个花瓶,她何苦哭得那么伤心呢。
3. 发这么大的脾气,那又何苦呢。
4. 何苦为这事操心呢。

why bother

Why trouble yourself over such a trifle?
She cried her heart out for the broken vase. It's really not worth it.
 a) *Is it worthwhile to flare up like this?*
 b) *It's an uncalled-for display of temper, isn't it?*
 (uncalled-for 本意是“没有必要”,“没有道理”之意。)
What's all this bother about?

何况 hékuàng

1. 我连五块钱都出不起,何况五百!
2. 我连个圈都画不圆,何况画人像呢。
3. 这孩子算术还没学,何况代数。
4. 死尚且不怕,何况

let alone

I can't afford even five dollars, let alone five hundred.
I can't even draw a circle, not to mention painting a portrait.
The boy has not even learned arithmetic, to say nothing of algebra.
We fear no death, much less difficul-

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| 困难 ₁ | ties. |
| 恨不得 hēnbùde | long for |
| 1. 我昨天真恨不得跟你们去跳舞, 可是我伤风了。 | <i>How I wished I could have gone to the ball with you yesterday, but I caught a cold.</i> |
| 2. 孩子们恨不得马上就是圣诞节。 | How the children are <i>longing for</i> Christmas! |
| 3. 男孩子恨不得马上就下课。 | The boys were <i>itching for</i> the lesson to end. |
| 4. 他恨不得马上找那恶棍报仇。 | He was so <i>thirsty for</i> a revenge on the villain. |
| 横竖 héngshù | in any case |
| 1. 这事情横竖是要干的, 还是早点动手为妙。 | <i>Since the job has got to be done, we had better do it early.</i> |
| 2. 横竖你我走的不是一条路, 那就分道扬镳吧。 | <i>At any rate, your way is not my way, so let's part company.</i> |
| 3. 你用不着紧催着, 横竖这事我给你办就是。 | You don't have to press me; I'll do it for you <i>anyhow</i> . |
| 4. 他横竖是比我强, 我认输了。 | <i>In any case he is a notch above me, so I'll throw up the sponge.</i> |
| 后来 hòulái | later on |
| 1. 他本来答应帮忙的, 可后来又说话不算数了。 | He had promised to help but broke his word <i>later on</i> . |
| 2. 她小时候长得可不 | She was somewhat ugly as a kid but |

- 么样,可后来大了, 倒挺俊的。 looked quite pretty when she grew up.
3. 下班后他没有立即 赴宴,可是他后来 去了。 He didn't go to the banquet right after office but went *afterwards*.
4. 我们本打算去看姑 妈的,可后来汽车 出了毛病,就去不 成了。 We made plans for a visit to our aunt, but *subsequent* difficulties with the car prevented it.

忽而……忽而…… hū'ér ... hū'ér ...

now ... now

1. 他忽而学音乐,忽 而学绘画,凭他这 种做法,怎能希望 会有成就呢? He studied music *today* and painting *tomorrow*. How could he expect to get anywhere that way?
2. 许多人秋天都得了 流感,因为天气忽 而冷,忽而热,很不 正常。 a) Lots of people suffered from flu last fall, because the weather was quite abnormal, changing *suddenly* from cold to hot, and hot to cold.
b) Lots of people suffered from flu last fall because the weather was cold *one minute* and hot *the next*.
3. 她的情绪忽而高, 忽而低,这又叫她 男朋友忽而高兴, 忽而灰心。 a) The *alternations* of her mood are the joy and despair *by turns* of her boyfriend.
b) She is always blowing hot and cold, and this *in turn* makes her boyfriend rejoice and despair *alternately*.

忽……忽 hū ... hū

见“忽而……忽而……”

hú'ér ... hū'ér p. 69

忽然(间) hūrán(jiān)

suddenly

1. 天气忽然就变了。
There was a *sudden* change in the weather.
2. 他忽然间把反对意见撤回。
All of a sudden, he withdrew his opposition.
3. 汽车忽然停住。
The car came to an *abrupt* stop.
4. 她忽然来了, 简直使他不知所措。
She came so *unexpectedly* that he didn't know what to do.
5. 看完那信, 她忽然哭了起来。
Having read the letter, she *burst into* tears.
6. 我忽然想起, 他可能帮忙。
An idea *struck* me that he might help.

互相 hùxiāng

mutual

1. 你是不是觉得他们互相吹捧得有点过头了?
Do you think their *mutual* admiration seems a bit excessive?
2. 两位伟大的科学家在会相遇时互相握手并互相致意。
The two great scientists shook hands with *each other* and exchanged compliments when they met at the meeting.
(第二个“互相”译为 exchange.)
3. 他们一起编字典, 互相配合得很好。
They had very good *teamwork* in compiling a dictionary.
4. 他一边在政府军中服役, 一边跟叛军互相勾结。
He was *hand in glove* with the rebels while serving in the government army.

恍如 huǎngrú

seem; as if.

1. 这一切恍如隔世。
It *seemed* all this had happened long,

2. 夫妻分离长达十年之后团圆，不禁抱头大哭，恍如是在梦中。
When the couple held their first reunion in a long ten years, they wept in each other's arms and felt *as though* they were dreaming.
3. 春天来了，田野上恍如铺上一块绿地毯。
When spring came, the fields were covered, *as it were*, with a green carpet.
(*as it were* 这一短语往往作插入语用，意为“好像”，用的是 subjunctive mood，可用在任何 tense 的句子里，本身不变。勿与 *as it is* 和 *as it was* 混同，这两者含“事实上”之意，*As it is [was], we can [could] not help you.* 一实在说，我们无法帮助你。)
- 恍若 huǎngruò 见“恍如” huǎngrú p. 70
- 浑身 húnshēn 见“一身” yīshēn p. 163
- 或许 huòxǔ perhaps
1. 他们或许能给我们一个直截了当的答覆。
Perhaps they may give us a straightforward answer.
2. 她一个礼拜都没露面，或许上美国去了。
She hasn't shown up for a whole week. *Maybe* she has gone to the States.
3. 我看她今天晚上或许不来了。
I'm afraid she *might* not come tonight.
4. 她或许能及时赶来。
a) It is *possible* she'll be here in time.
b) She is *likely* to be here in time.
5. 我看他或许不至于这么粗心吧。
I don't think he *would* be so careless.

几乎 jīhū

1. 经理和他那位漂亮的女秘书的事已是个公开秘密，几乎人人知道。
The affair between the manager and his pretty secretary is an open secret. *Nearly* everybody knows.
2. 她突然转身，几乎撞在别人身上。
She turned so abruptly that she *almost* bumped into somebody.
3. 他俩几乎是一般高矮。
The two are *about* the same height.
4. 小姑娘听说不让她看今天晚上的电视，几乎都要哭了。
The little girl was *on the verge* of tears when she learned that she wouldn't be allowed to watch tonight's TV programme.
5. 昨晚十二点的时候，我觉得越来越困，后来几乎都睡着了，忽然间听见有人敲门。
At twelve last night I became more and more drowsy, and was *on the point of* dropping off, when a knock at the door was heard.
6. 我近来几乎一次也没见着他。
I *hardly ever* see him nowadays.
7. 我多年没见她，几乎都认不出她来了。
I hadn't seen her for so many years that I could *scarcely* recognize her.
8. 他们几乎是从来不上夜总会的。
They *rarely, if ever*, go to night-clubs.
9. 他晚上几乎是不过十二点不回家的。
He *seldom, if ever*, came home before twelve at night.
10. 他几乎是从来不吃水果的。
He *seldom or never* eats fruit.
11. 几乎没有一个诗人能像莎翁获得那么广泛的赞扬。
Few poets, *if any*, have won as much widespread admiration as Shakespeare.

12. 我们几乎半夜才到家。
It was *getting on for* midnight when we arrived home.
13. 我们几乎排了两小时的长龙。
We stood in the queue *going on for* two hours.
(*going on for* 相当于 *approaching* 之意, It's *going on for* tea-time 一差不多到喝茶的时候了。)
14. 这件事情几乎可以说解决了。
The matter was *as good as* settled.
15. 他几乎上了那个骗子的当。
He *came near* being taken in by the quack.
(*come near* 相当于 *escape narrowly* 或 *on the point of* 之意, 后跟原形动词+ing.)
16. 她几乎给吓死了。
She was *near* death with fright.
17. 经修葺后, 这庙几乎是跟新盖的一样。
After renovation the temple looks *as good as* new.
(*as good as* 相当于 *almost* 的意思。)
18. 他们到来的时候, 舞会几乎都结束了。
The party was *all but* over when they arrived.
(*all but* 相当于“差一点就”之意。)
19. 上星期几乎天天都下雪。
It snowed *practically* every day last week.
20. 那男孩今天几乎把那篇作文写完了。
The boy has *pretty well* (or, *pretty much*) finished his composition today.

基本上 jīběnshàng

basically; on the whole

1. 我基本上同意这样一个安排。
On the whole, I agree to this arrangement.
(*on the whole* 本意为“总的来说”、“大体上” — taking everything into consideration)
2. 这次事故的责任基
The driver was *largely* responsible for

- 本上应由司机来负。 the accident.
(largely 侧重“大部分”之意。)
3. 到城里去的这条路基本上好的。 The road to the city is good *in the main* (or, *for the most part*.)
(in the main 侧重“大体上”之意,与 on the whole 同义。)
4. 李家基本上是个好邻居。 *Broadly speaking*, the Lees are desirable neighbours.
5. 今年夏天的旅游者基本上是教师和学生。 The tourists this summer are *mainly* teachers and students.

基于 jīyú

- in view of; because of
1. 基于世界市场的需求,小麦价格逐步上升。 The price of wheat has risen steadily *by reason of* the demand of the world market.
(by reason of 实际是“由于”、“因为” — because of 之意。)
2. 基于情况紧迫,我们必须当机立断。 We must make a prompt decision *in view of* the urgency of the case.
(in view of 原意是“鉴于” — considering)
3. 基于某种原因,会议延至下周召开。 *Due to some reason* the meeting is to be postponed until next week.
4. 基于上述论点,我们愿提出一项新建议。 *Because of* the above-mentioned arguments, we would like to put forward a new proposition.
5. 基于局势日益紧张,我们必须采取必要措施。 *Seeing that* the situation is becoming more and more strained, we must adopt necessary measures.
6. 基于他以往的贡献,我们决定原谅他。
a) We decided to pardon him *in consideration of* his past services.
b) *Considering* his past services, we

decided to pardon him.

藉此 jǐcǐ

见“借以” jièyǐ p. 86

及时 jǐshí

timely; in time

1. 别着急! 他会及时到来的。
Don't worry! He'll be here *in good time*.
2. 你来的真及时, 我正要出去哩。
You've come *in the nick of time*; I am going to go out very soon.
3. 他们及时把病人送进医院。
They sent the patient to the hospital *without delay*.
4. 一场及时雨简直比金子还值钱。
A *timely* rain, as it were, is dearer than gold.
5. 改过要及时。
Never hesitate to mend.
6. 这信来得非常及时, 可省了我们许多麻烦。
The letter came at a *most opportune moment*, saving all of us a lot of headaches.

即便 jǐbiàn

见“即使” jǐshǐ p. 75

即刻 jíkè

见“立即” lìjí p. 102

即令 jǐlìng

见“即使” jǐshǐ p. 75

即使 jǐshǐ

even if

1. 即使你不高兴, 我也没法子。
I can't help it *even if* you don't like it.
2. 即使有重重困难, 他们还是把试验进行下去。
They went on with the experiment, *notwithstanding* all the difficulties.
(notwithstanding 在此实际上是“尽管”—in

- spite of 之意。)
3. 即使是刮大风, 我也要
去。
I shall go *in spite of* the storm.
4. 她说即使是强迫她, 她也绝不跟他
出去。
She said she would never go out with him even *though* she be forced to.
5. 她说即使他的朋友都不跟他来往, 她
也不会离开他。
She said she would never leave him *even when* all his friends desert him.

急急忙忙 jíjí mángmáng 见“急忙” jí máng p. 76

- 急忙 jí máng in a hurry**
1. 他知道一分钟也不能浪费, 便急忙向
机场奔去。
Seeing that there was not a moment to lose, he *hastened to* the airport.
2. 看样子小偷是在急
忙中溜走的, 因为
门都没关上。
It seemed the burglar left *in great haste*, leaving the door wide open.
3. 雨开始下起来, 我
们急忙回家。
a) As it began to rain, we *hurried* home.
b) We *rushed* home for it began to rain.
4. 他在急忙中赶火
车, 竟把公事包留
在的士里了。
In his hurry to catch the train, he left his briefcase in the taxi.
5. 他发现一个小孩正
跑过马路, 便急忙
把车子刹住。
Seeing a little boy running across the street, he *quickly* put on the brakes.
6. 雨开始大起来, 他
When it began to pour, they *made a*

们急忙找地方去躲。 *dash for shelter.*

急切 jíqiè

1. 这事情急切间很难办到。
2. 孩子们都急切地盼望着你的到来。
3. 他十分急切地希望能获得她的爱。

eagerly; in a hurry

a) This can't be done *at such short notice.*

b) I can't tackle the thing *in such a hurry.*

The children are *eagerly* looking forward to your visit.

a) He was anxious (or, was *all anxiety*) to win her love.

b) He *fervently* hoped he could win her love.

急于 jíyú

1. 由于时间紧迫, 所以他急于要见你。
2. 时间越来越晚, 他们都急于着手工作。
3. 由于银根紧, 他们急于要做成这笔买卖。
4. 急于得出结论是不会对你有什么好处的。
5. 她那客人实在迟钝, 竟看不出她正急于出门哩。
6. 他和女朋友昨天才

eager; anxious

As time is pressing, he's *anxious* to meet you.

They were all *impatient* to start work as it was getting late.

Because money was tight, they were *eager* to get the deal settled.

It won't do you any good to *jump to conclusions.*

(jump to conclusions 是个短语, 本身含有“急急忙忙去做”之意。)

Her guest was really not very bright, he couldn't see that she was *all eagerness* to go out.

They met yesterday, and yet he is al-

- 见过面，可他已经急于要约见她了。
 ready *longing for* (or, *itching for*) another rendezvous with his girl-friend.
7. 他急于要为朋友复仇。
 He was *burning* to revenge his friend. (long for, itch for 和 burn 都侧重在“渴望去做”之意, 其中 burn 色彩更强烈, 颇合中文“五内如焚”之意。)
- 极了 jíle
 见“……得不得了”
 ... débùdéliǎo p. 39
- 极其 jíqí
 见“十分” shífēn p. 125
- 极其量 jíqǐliàng
 见“至多” zhìduō p. 187
- 几分 jífēn
 a bit; somewhat
1. 他已经有几分醉意, 别再灌他了。
 He is already *a bit* tipsy. Don't make him drink any more.
2. 这女孩子颇有几分姿色。
 The girl looks *rather* pretty.
3. 他很有几分才气。
 There is *quite some* talent in him.
4. 他的话确有几分道理。
 There is *something* in what he said indeed.
5. 他说英国话带着浓重的中国口音, 而说中国话又带几分洋腔调。
 He speaks English with a strong Chinese accent and speaks Chinese with a *slight* foreign lilt.
6. 他听说她没来参加舞会, 不免感到几分失望。
 He was *somewhat* disappointed that she didn't come to the party.

既然 jìrán

1. 既然时间紧迫, 你还是坐的士去为好。
 2. 既然你读过这篇文章, 不知你是否明白它说的是怎么回事。
 3. 你既然还买不起新衣服, 那就凑合穿这一套吧。
 4. 既然那经常逃学的学生能改过自新, 校长便答应给他一个机会。
 5. 你既然要做, 那就把它做好吧。
- 事情既然如此, 我看也就没法子想了。

since; as

As you are pushed for time, you had better take a taxi.

Now that you've read the article through, can you make head or tail of it?

Since you can't afford a new suit yet, you've to make do with this one.

Seeing that the student who often played truant was turning over a new leaf, the principal agreed to give him a chance.

Do it well if you do it at all.

Such being the case, I don't see any way out.

既……又…… jì ... yòu both ... and

1. 这房间既暗又窄。
2. 他父亲既严厉又仁慈。
3. 她既美丽又聪明。
4. 他既聪明又用功。
5. 他既不喝酒又不赌钱, 真是理想的丈夫。

The room is both dingy and cramped.

Her father is at once strict and kind.

She is intelligent as well as pretty.

He is clever and, at the same time, diligent.

He neither drinks nor gambles — quite an ideal husband!

假定 jiǎdìng

见“假如” jiǎrú p. 80

假如 jiǎrú

if; supposing

1. 假如他不同意怎么办?
What if he doesn't agree?
2. 假如我下午再来, 不知你是否方便?
Suppose I come again, would the afternoon be convenient?
3. 假如我不能按期把书看完, 不知能否再续借几天?
In case I can't finish the book in time, may I renew it for a few days?
4. 假如你能早五分钟来就好了。
If only you had come five minutes earlier.
5. 假如真是这样, 那也不要紧。
It doesn't matter even if this is the case.
6. 假如我当初能识破他的诡计就好了!
I wish I had seen through his trick!
(直译: “我希望我真能看破他的诡计”。利用虚拟式 subjunctive — “had seen through” 来表达“假如”。)
7. 假如不是你们帮忙, 我准定失败了。
But for your help, I should have failed.
8. 假如一切顺利, 下周就可开始做试验。
All being well, we'll start the experiment next week.
9. 假如你不用功的话, 你就会考不及格。
Unless you work harder you will not pass the examination.
10. 假如你答应下个月把钱还我, 我可以把钱借给你。
I will lend you the money you want on condition that you promise to repay me by next month.

简直 jiǎnzhi

simply; as good as

1. 他的发音简直太可怕了。 His pronunciation is *simply* terrible.
2. 这故事简直是一派胡言。 The story was *sheer* nonsense.
3. 她简直是个泼妇。 She is a shrew *all right*.
4. 他简直胸无大志。 He has no ambition *at all*.
5. 他简直胸无点墨。 He is *nothing but* an illiterate.
6. 我认为这本书简直毫无价值。 I consider the book *of little* account.
7. 他俩简直是一般高。 The two are *almost exactly* of the same height.
8. 她哭得死去活来, 我简直不知怎么办才好。 She was weeping her heart out, and I *hardly* knew what to do.
9. 她变得这么厉害, 我简直认不出是她了。 She has changed so much that I *can scarcely* recognize her.
10. 汽车经过修理, 简直跟新的一样。 Having been repaired, the car looks *as good as* new.
11. 她走的时候, 高兴得简直跳起舞来了。 Away she went, *literally* dancing.
12. 他简直是个大傻瓜一样。 He is *little better than* a big fool.
13. 他那无礼的样子, 我简直受不了。 His insolence is *more than I can* bear.
14. 他的论点, 简直是荒谬的。 a) His argument was *nothing short of* (or, was *little short of*) being ridiculous.
b) His argument *bordered on* the absurd.
15. 他很穷, 穷得简直无以为生。 He is poor, *so much so that he can* hardly get enough to live.

16. 天气热极了，简直可以在人行道上煎鸡蛋。
It was hot *enough* to fry an egg on the pavement.
17. 人人都说她丈夫简直是个衣冠禽兽。
Everyone says her husband is *next door* to a brute.
18. 我当时简直忍不住要把他轰出去。
I was *tempted* to throw him out then.
19. 他这样做简直是自找麻烦。
In so doing, he was inviting trouble.
20. 这样做简直是疯了。
It is *downright* (or, *sheer*) madness to do such a thing.
21. 他简直是从来也不请假。
He *seldom, if ever*, asks for leave.

渐渐 jiànjiàn

- gradually
1. 我们看出他渐渐恢复了健康。
a) We noticed a *gradual* improvement in his health.
b) We noticed that his health was improving *little by little*.
2. 雨渐渐地小了。
a) The rain is *dying down* (or, *dying away*).
b) The rain is *beginning to let up*.
3. 蜗牛渐渐成为人的食品。
Snails are *making their way* as an article of food.
4. 那老人得了癌症，正渐渐地走向死亡。
The old man has a cancer, and is *dying by inches*.
5. 他渐渐从事务中脱出身来。
He withdrew from business *by degrees*.
6. 病人已经渐渐能坐起来了。
The patient is strong *enough* to sit up a little.
7. 他渐渐养成了吸毒
He *drifted into* a habit of drug taking.

的习惯。

8. 他渐渐喜欢打桥牌了。 He has grown to like playing bridge.

鉴于 jiànyú

- in view of
1. 鉴于情况紧迫，我们必须下定决心。 We must make up our minds at once in view of the urgency of the case.
2. 鉴于国外需求，小麦价格上涨。 The price of wheat has risen by reason of foreign demand.
3. 鉴于台风袭击，学校今日停课。 There is no school today on account of the typhoon (or, due to the typhoon.)
4. 鉴于他的病情，我们今冬将在欧洲居留。 Owing to (or, In consideration of) his ill health, we shall stay in Europe for the winter.
5. 鉴于她已成年，她父亲终于同意她去当修女。 Seeing that (or, Considering that) she had come of age, her father finally agreed that she might enter a convent.

将近 jiāngjìn

- nearly; close to
1. 现在接近天亮了。 It's almost dawn now.
2. 他是接近三月中旬的时候来的。 He came toward the middle of March.
3. 这会儿接近有五点。 It's nearly five o'clock.
4. 她今年接近四十岁。 a) She is close to (or, close on) forty.
b) She is approaching forty.
c) She is getting on for (or, going on for) forty.
d) She is on the verge of forty.
5. 他已经到了接近破产的地步。 He is on the verge of bankruptcy.

6. 这项工程将近完成。 The project *is nearing* completion.
 7. 这工厂每月将近生产两万台电视机。 The monthly output of TV sets in this factory *approximates to* 20,000.

接连 jiēlián

- on end; in succession
1. 马拉松跳舞比赛的参加者接连跳了二十多天才赢得冠军。 The marathon dancers had to dance for more than twenty days *on end* to win the championship.
 (on end 是个短语,作 continuously 解。)
2. 车间共十八人,分成三班,每班接连做活八小时。 There were eighteen men in the workshop, and they were divided into three gangs, each laboring eight hours *at a stretch*.
 (at a stretch 含“一口气干下去”之意。)
3. 她接连三年都获得奖学金。 She has won the scholarship for three years *running*.
 (running 有“接连若干次”之意,即 in succession,从句法上说,是个 predicative adjective,修饰 years。)
4. 我们已经接连干了五个小时。 We've worked for five *consecutive* hours.
5. 我累得要死,已经接连忙了好几小时了。 I'm dog-tired; I've been on the go for several hours *without a break*.
6. 她接连生了七个女儿。 She has borne seven daughters *in succession*.
 (in succession 强调“一个接一个”的意思。)
7. 问题接连地出现。 Problems have cropped up *one after the other*.
8. 大雨接连下了好几天。 It poured for several days.
9. 好消息接连传来。 Glad tidings came *on top of each*

10. 他们足球队这一季接连赢了四场。
other.
 Their football team has won four games *in a row* this season.
- 竭力** jièlì do one's utmost
1. 他竭力为自己的行为辩解。
 He *tried every means* to justify his conduct.
 (try every means 强调“想方设法”。)
2. 他竭力把杠铃高举过头。
 He tried *with all his might* to lift the barbell over his head.
 (这里的“力”作实指,所以用 might 相当于 strength。这里不能用上句的 means 代替,因 means 作“方法”解。)
3. 他竭力巴结新上司。
 He *spared no pains* to bootlick the new boss.
 (spare no pains 侧重“不遗余力”,“不惜花费力气”之意。)
4. 警方正竭力制止贩卖毒品。
 The police *are going all out* to put a stop to drug dealing.
 (go all out 强调“全力以赴”之意。)
5. 他竭力追随他的左右。
 He *made an all out effort* to follow him closely.
6. 大卫竭力讨好他的老师。
 David *did his utmost* to please his teacher.
- 截然** jiérán entirely
1. 双方所持态度截然不同。
 Attitudes adopted by both sides are *entirely* (or, *completely*) different.
2. 他们对此事的看法截然不同。
 Their opinions about the matter are *poles apart*.
3. 动机和效果是截然分不开的。
 Motive is *absolutely* inseparable from effect.

结果 jiéguǒ

见“终于” zhōngyú p.190

借以 jièyǐ

1. 他节衣缩食，借以资助女友完成学业。

by way of; so as to

He led a frugal life *with a view to* supporting his girl-friend to complete her studies.

(with a view to 相当于 for the purpose of 或 in order to 解, 注意 to 是 preposition, 后面应跟 noun 或 gerund, 不能跟原形动词。)

2. 他宽恕了他那不走正道的兄弟，借以维持手足之情。

He forgave his good-for-nothing brother *for the purpose of* maintaining (or, *in order to* maintain) brotherhood.

3. 信上奉献小诗一首，借以表露对卿之爱意。

Here in this letter, I affectionately offer thee a little poem, *so as to* express my tender passion for thee.

仅仅 jǐnjǐn

only; merely

1. 她结婚的时候仅仅十六岁。

She was *only* sixteen when she got married.

2. 仅仅成年，他就挑起养家的担子了。

He supported the family when he was *barely* of age.

3. 这仅仅是个时间问题。

It's *merely* a matter of time.

4. 哪怕到了四十岁，他在母亲眼里也仅仅是个孩子。

Even at the age of forty he was *no more than* (or, *nothing but*) a child in the eyes of his mother.

尽管 jǐnguǎn

I. 表示“虽然” — though; in spite of

1. 尽管穷，他还是拼命装门面。

Poor as he was, he tried hard to keep up appearances.

(这是一种句型, as 在这里作连词用, 引出一个表示“让步”的状语从句。as 在这种句型里相当于 though, 但语气比 though 强, 这样用时一定要把表语 (predicative) 或谓语放在前面, 它的公式有两种:

- 1) “表语(adj. or adv.)+ as+主语和谓语”。
- 2) 动词 + as + 主语 + 助动词 (may, would, etc.)

Much as she liked him, she wouldn't marry him. ——她尽管很喜欢他, 但还是没跟他结婚。

Try as he would, he couldn't win her love. ——他尽管作了种种努力, 但还是得不到她的欢心。)

2. 他最近尽管买了汽车, 其实是欠了一身债。

Although he has bought a car recently, he is actually up to his ears in debt.

3. 尽管我们一再劝他, 他还是越来越喜欢那女孩子。

In spite of all the advice we gave him, he took to that girl more and more.

4. 尽管他细心策划, 结论还是错了。

For all his careful planning, he still came to a wrong conclusion.

(for all 是个短语, 作 in spite of 解。)

5. 尽管他有这许多缺点, 他还是个好人。

With all his faults, he is still a good man.

(with all 与 for all 相同。)

6. 乔治和我都认为这本书很有意思, 尽管我们对作者的一些观点彼此看法不一样。

George and I found the book very interesting even if we didn't see eye to eye about some of the author's view points.

II. 表示“不限”、“随意”——freely; as

1. 我们家的大门永远向你开着，你尽管来好了。
2. 大家尽管提问题好了。
3. 他一定会来的，你尽管放心吧。

one likes

Our door is always open to you; come as often as you like.

You are free to ask questions.

He is sure to come. You don't have to worry at all.

尽可能 jǐnkěnéng

1. 说真的，我尽可能早点来。
2. 关于这个句型，我将提供尽可能多的例句。
3. 在讨论中，我将尽可能听取各方面的意见。
4. 画家尽可能发挥了色彩的作用。

as ... as possible

I promise to come as early as I can. (or, ... to come at the earliest possible date.)

As for this pattern, I'll give you as many example sentences as possible.

I'll try my best to keep an open mind in the discussion.

The artist has made a most telling use of colour.

尽快 jīnkùài

1. 我会尽快给你一个明确的答复。
2. 我一定尽快赶来。
3. 我公司将尽快把样品寄上。
4. 请尽快赐复为盼。

as quickly as possible

I'll give you a definite answer as quickly as possible.

I'll come as early as I can.

We'll send you the example at the earliest date.

Please reply at your earliest convenience.

尽量 jǐnliàng

1. 我们将尽量满足顾客的需要。
2. 舞会要到两点才结束，你们尽量跳好了。

as much as; to one's heart content
We'll try to meet the needs of the customers *as fully as we can*.
The ball will not close till two o'clock, so you can dance *to your heart's content*.

(to one's heart's content 侧重于“尽情”之意。)

3. 他在生意上尽量发挥了他的所长。

In business, he has brought out his strong points *to the full*.

(to the full 相当于 to the utmost extent, 即达极度之意。)

4. 他的提议很不错，你应该尽量利用时机。

He has made a fair offer, and you should *make the most* (or, *make the best*) of your opportunity.

(make the most; make the best 侧重于“自己最有利地去做”之意。)

尽早 jǐnzǎo

见“尽快” jǐnkùài p.88

尽先 jǐnxiān

give first priority to

1. 费用问题应尽先考虑。
2. 地震后，他们尽先帮助孤儿。
3. 地方当局尽先安排住房建筑事宜。
4. 请尽先让年纪大的

a) The question of expense should *take precedence* of all others.

b) The question of expense should *have top priority over* all others.

After the earthquake they *gave priority to* helping the orphans.

(to give priority to 是个 set phrase, to 后跟 gerund.)

The local authorities *put* the question of housing *above everything*.

Please let the older people *take their*

人就座。

seats first.

尽力 jìnlì

do one's best

1. 她尽力跟上班上的同学。
She made every effort to catch up with the others.
2. 吵过架以后,这对年青夫妇便尽力弥合,言归于好。
After quarrelling, the young couple did their best (or, did their utmost) to make it up.
3. 各界人士对戒烟运动无不尽力支持。
People from all walks of life gave an all-out support to the movement against smoking.
4. 女裁缝尽力把她的结婚礼服做得时髦一些。
The dress-maker took great pains to make her wedding dress very stylish.
5. 警方尽力兜捕偷渡过来的人。
The police tried all they could to round up the fugitives.

尽情 jìnqíng

to one's heart's content

1. 土人在节日里尽情歌舞。
The natives sang and danced to their hearts' content in the festival. (参阅“尽量” [jǐnliàng] 条 2)
2. 他们游览黄山,尽情领略那秀丽的山色。
They enjoyed the beauty of the mountain scenery to the full when they visited Huang Shan.
(参阅“尽量” [jǐnliàng] 条 3)
3. 那孩子尽情地读着书中描写的种种奇遇。
The boy drank in all the adventures described in the book.
4. 观众尽情欣赏那位印度舞蹈家的精彩表演。
The audience feasted their eyes on (or, drank in) the wonderful performance of the Indian dancer.

进一步 jìnyībù

1. 我们必须进一步采取
措施, 以适应当前
形势。
2. 找一天, 我们不妨
进一步研究这件事
情。
3. 经过进一步了
解, 他俩同意解除婚
约。
4. 经过进一步的考
虑, 我明白这样做
可能招致又一次的
失败。
5. 他进一步考虑了自
己的经济状况之
后, 决定不上大
学。
6. 这一项决定了, 我
们进一步讨论下一
项吧。

take a step forward; to better

We must *take further steps* to meet the present situation.We might as well *go deeply into* the matter someday.*Reaching a better understanding*, both of them agreed to break off their **en-**agement.On **second thought**, I see by doing this we might be in for another **fail-**ure.He decided not to go to the university *after giving thought to* his financial condition.This being decided, let us *proceed to* the next item.

近乎 jìnhū

1. 他地震后竟得以幸
存, 此事实在近乎
奇迹。
2. 他的话已近乎无礼
了。

close to; almost

The fact that he had survived the earth-quake was really *little short of* (or, *nothing short of*) being marvellous.

(little or nothing short of = little or nothing less than, 有“不少于”或“接近于”, “近乎”之意。)

What he had said *borders on* **inso-**lence.

(border on 本意“毗连”、“接界”，转义为 almost the same as.)

3. 工厂现正处于一种近乎倒闭的状态。
 a) The factory is now in a state of *near* bankruptcy.
 b) The factory is now *on the verge of* bankruptcy.
4. 她近乎六十了。
 a) She is *close to* (or, *close on*) sixty.
 b) She is *approaching* sixty.
 c) She is *getting on for* (or, *going on for*) sixty.
5. 他月入近乎一万元。
 His monthly income *approximated to* ten thousand dollars.

经常 jīngcháng

frequently; often

1. 她晚上经常来聊天。
 She *often* drops in for a chat in the evenings.
2. 我上学的时候，礼拜天经常上那儿去。
 When I was a student, I *used to* go there on Sundays.
3. 小职员经常上写字楼附近的一家咖啡馆去。
 The clerks *frequented* the cafe near their offices.
4. 她经常上我们这儿来买东西。
 She is a *regular* customer of ours.
5. 这种事情经常发生。
 This sort of thing is a *common* occurrence.

井井有条 jǐngjǐng yǒu tiáo

in perfect order

1. 这里的一切井井有条。
 Everything here is *in good order* (or, *in perfect order*).

2. 这家公司的职员都在井井有条地工作。
The staff of the company are all working *methodically*.
3. 他设法使写字楼保持井井有条的秩序。
He tried to keep his office *ship-shape*.

井然 jǐngrán

见“井井有条” jǐngjǐng yǒu tiáo p. 92

径直 jìngzhí

straight

1. 他决定不上日本，径直回美国去了。
He decided against visiting Japan and went *straight* back to the States.
2. 你只要径直往前走，很快就能找到那个巴士站。
Just keep *straight* on and you'll find the bus-stop before long.
3. 有话就请径直讲吧。
a) Speak out, please!
b) Come *straight* to the point, please.
4. 他径直从希腊原文把史诗译出。
He translated the epic *direct* from Greek.
5. 他们径直向公园走去。
They *made a bee-line* for the park.
(make a bee-line for a place 原意是直路走向某处之意。)

径自 jìngzì

unexpectedly

1. 她连个招呼也不打，径自就来了。
She came without letting us know beforehand.
2. 谁想到她径自做出这样的蠢事来！
Who would have expected that she could do such a foolish thing?
3. 他一句话也没说，径自走了。
He went away without saying a word.

(上三句英译都是用语气体现出事先没有意料到之意。)

竟然 jìngrán

1. 没想到天气竟然冷得这么快。
2. 没想到竟然会在这儿看见你。
3. 他竟然把责任推到我身上来了。
4. 你瞧，他竟然叫我笨蛋来着！
5. 真奇怪，他竟然也来了。
6. 他们竟然取消了合同。
7. 她真蠢，竟然相信他的甜言蜜语。
8. 真想不到她竟然会嫁给这么粗鲁的一个人。

go so far as to; unexpectedly

We *little expected* that the weather would turn cold so soon.I *never thought* I would see you here.He *went so far as to* shift the blame onto me.To *think* that he called me a big fool!

(用 To think 开头的句子,表达意想不到的意,相当于 Isn't it surprising, to think 后接 that clause 或接 of 都可以,如 To think of his not knowing anything about it! 你看,他对这事竟然一无所知。)

a) To my surprise, he also came!

b) I'm really surprised at his coming at all.

They actually went back on their contract.

a) She was stupid *enough to* believe his honeyed words.b) She was *so stupid as to* believe his honeyed words.

(be enough to; be so ... as, 都含“达到如此的程度,竟然……”之意。)

a) It is surprising that she should marry such an ill-mannered person.

(“It is + surprising 或 amazing, strange 一类表露感情的词 + that + should”, 都隐含“竟然”之意,如 It is marvellous that the little boy should play Bach's works so

beautifully. 一小男孩竟然把巴哈的作品演奏得那么美,实在是了不起。)

b) To my surprise, she married such an ill-mannered person.

c) She has been and married such an ill-mannered person.

(have been and + past participle 表示惊讶之意,是一种口语体。)

究竟 jiūjìng

1. 究竟谁主管这展览的?
2. 你说说,究竟是谁告诉你的?
3. 他究竟是个什么人?
4. 他究竟想干什么?
5. 你究竟喜不喜欢这东西?

1. 别说他了,他究竟是个孩子嘛!
2. 这消息也许叫人想不到,但究竟是真的。

就 jiù

1. 他一得到你的口信就动身了。
2. 稍等一会儿,我就来。

I. 表示“追究”,用于问句

Who actually bosses the show?

Tell me, whoever told you that.

What the deuce is he?

What *exactly* is he up to?

Do you like it *at all*?

II. 表示“毕竟”

Don't blame him. *After all* he is only a child.

The news may be unexpected, but it is true *nevertheless*.

语气词

I. 表示“立即”—— at once

He started off *the moment* he got your message.

Just a minute, I'll be *right* there.

3. 他听说我们有困难, 就带着他银行那一小笔钱来了。
4. 我这就给他去电话。
5. 他刚晕倒, 他们就打发人去请医生了。

As soon as he learned we were in difficulties, he came with what little sum of money he'd put away in the bank.
I'll ring him up *right away*.
They sent for the doctor *without delay* when he went off in a faint.

1. 他十九岁就从牛津毕业了。
2. 她十五岁就成了熟练工人。
3. 他们早在一九五三年就在香港定居了。

II. 表示“已经” — *already*
He graduated from Oxford when he was *only* nineteen.
She was *already* a skilled worker at the age of fifteen.
They settled down in Hong Kong as early as 1953.

1. 我就有十块钱, 你拿去使吧。
2. 你就抽几分钟跟我谈谈, 行吗?
3. 你就再唱一个吧!
4. 我就想问问她的名字。

III. 表示“只不过” — *only; merely*
I've got *only* ten bucks. You may have it.
Could you spare me a few minutes?
Just one more song, please!
I *merely* want to know her name.

1. 问题就在这里了。
2. 我要的就是这个!
3. 我就在这个房间办公。

IV. 表示“恰好” — *exactly*
This is *just* the point.
That's *exactly* what I want.
This is the room I work in.

1. 我就不想卷进这事去。

V. 表示“不管怎样” — *whatever happens*
I *just* don't want to get involved.

2. 她就不肯让步。 She *simply* refused to give in.
 3. 你别跟我说他出门了这种话, 我就要见他! Don't tell me he isn't in. *I simply must* see him!

VI. 表示“本来如此”

1. 我就晓得他会来的。 I knew he would come.
 2. 你本来就用不着担这份心。 You needn't have worried about it.

VII. 表示“不再追究” — let it be; leave it at that

1. 他不愿意干这活儿, 那就别干好了。 If he doesn't want to do the job, he doesn't have to.
 2. 你不同意就算了。 Since you don't agree, let's forget about it.
 3. 他就算是来, 那也晚了。 Even if he did come, it would still be too late.

就……而论 jiù...ér lùn

1. 就目前而论, 我还下不了决心卖这房子。 *As things stand* (or, *As things are*), I cannot make up my mind to sell the house.
 2. 就当前的情况而论, 我还不能给你明确的答复。 *As matters stand* (or, *As the matter stands*; or, *As the case stands*), I cannot give you a definite answer.
 3. 就我而论, 我并非反对你上大学。 *So far as I am concerned*, I'm not against your going to university.
 4. 就音质而论, 这架录音机好极了。 *As far as tone quality goes*, the tape-recorder is excellent.

就是……也…… jiùshì ... yě ...
 even if

1. 你就是把我宰了，我也办不到。
If I were to be (or, Should I be) shot for it, I couldn't.
2. 就是太阳从西边出来，我也不嫁给你！
Even if the sun were to rise in the west, I wouldn't marry you.
3. 你就是不高兴，我也没法子。
I can't help it, even though you don't like it.
4. 听到狮子的吼叫，就是最勇敢的人也免不了要胆战心惊的。
The lion's roar will strike terror into the bravest heart.
(英语的形容词最高级往往含 even 的意思，又例如 *The shortest cut would take us half an hour to get there.* 一就是走捷径也得半个小时才到。)

居然 jūrán

- to one's surprise (可参阅“竟然” jìngrán 条) p. 94
1. 没想到他居然被选为足球队队长！
Who would have thought he would have made captain of the football team?
 2. 她居然得了奖学金，这太神了！
a) *She has won a scholarship? It's really incredible!*
b) *To think that she has won a scholarship!*
 3. 他居然想把一切都赖掉！
He went so far as to deny everything!
 4. 你们居然敢歇着不干活！
How dare you leave your work and rest!

据 jù

- according to
1. 据说他们要在五月结婚。
It's said that they are going to marry in May.

2. 据公司规定, 职员必须签到。
According to the rules of the company, all employees have to sign (or, clock) in on arrival at the office.
3. 据我了解, 他近来干得很不错。
As far as I know, he is getting along quite well with his work.
4. 据我了解, 他是因为自己莽撞才惹出麻烦来的。
As I understand it, he got into trouble through his own rashness.
5. 据谣传, 这两个国家很快就要打仗。
Rumour has it that there will be a war between the two nations.
6. 据我看, 你的结论不对头。
In my opinion, you've jumped to the wrong conclusion.

决然 juérán

absolutely

1. 你这个计划是决然不会有结果的。
As sure as you live, you'll get nowhere with such a plan.
(as sure as you live 是个谚语, 意为“肯定”。)
2. 像他这样的人是决然靠不住的。
A man like him is absolutely unreliable.
3. 他的演讲非常沉闷, 那是决然引不起人们的兴趣的。
His speech was so dull that it was bound to fall flat.
(参阅下条“绝对”[juéduì])

绝对 juéduì

absolutely

1. 他这人绝对可靠。
a) He is *absolutely* reliable.
b) I've *absolute* faith in his honesty.
2. 这件事绝对保密。
It's top secret.
3. 我绝对不否认你刚才说的话是出于好意。
I'd be the last person to deny that what you've said is based on good intention.

4. 像他这样赌博是绝对没有好下场的。
A gambler like him *is bound to* come to ruin.
5. 这是个原则问题，我们绝对不能让步。
It's matter of principle. We must *on no account* give in.
6. 这样一个结果，我是绝对没有料到的。
Such an outcome *is entirely beyond* my expectation.
7. 那是绝对办不到的。
That *won't do at all*.

看来 kànlái

见“看样子” kànyàngzi p. 100

看样子 kànyàngzi

it seems

1. 看样子，她又要犯病了。
It looks like she is going to be ill again.
2. 看样子，这主意挺不错。
That *looks to be* a very good idea.
(look to be = seem to be, 是近年来的一种新用法。但在从前不这么用，有的语法书还强调 look 在这一意义上不能跟不定式连用。)
3. 看样子她病了。
She *seems* ill.
4. 看样子，他很高兴。
He *appears* to be very happy.
5. 看样子，好像要下雨。
a) It *looks* (or, *seems*) *as if* it is going to rain.
b) It *looks like* rain.

可 kě

语气词

- I. 表示加强:
1. 这天气可讨厌啦!
The weather is *really* abominable.
2. 那表演可精彩啦!
The performance was *just* splendid!
3. 这孩子可真气人!
What an annoying child!

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 4. 他回答得可真妙! | He <i>did</i> give a clever answer. |
| 5. 你可别忘了替我寄信啊! | <i>Mind</i> you don't forget to post the letter for me! |
| 6. 你到了以后, 可得来信啊! | <i>Be sure</i> to write to us when you get there! |
| 7. 他们听说这个消息可高兴啦! | They were <i>indeed</i> very glad to hear the news. |

II. 表示疑问

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| 1. 你这可是什么意思? | <i>What on earth</i> do you mean? |
| 2. 他可说对了没有? | Did he <i>ever</i> say the right thing? |
| 3. 他可是想干什么? | What <i>really</i> is he up to? |

恐怕 kǒngpà

I'm afraid; perhaps

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. 你暂时恐怕只能靠这一点点收入过日子了。 | <i>I'm afraid</i> you have to make do with this small income for the time being. |
| 2. 你恐怕还得试一次。 | You <i>might as well</i> try again. |
| 3. 他恐怕得有几天才下得了决心。 | <i>Perhaps</i> it will take him several days to make up his mind. |
| 4. 他恐怕不喜欢这个。 | <i>I can't say</i> he'll like it. |
| 5. 他对酒恐怕不一定内行。 | <i>I don't think</i> he is a good judge of wine. |

……来着 ...láizhè

语气词

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. 你忘了有一阵子迷你裙怎么流行来着? | Don't you remember how mini-skirts were all the rage for some time? |
| 2. 我给你打电话的时候, 她在干什么 | What was she doing when I called you on the telephone? |

来着？

3. 上个月他们路过这一带，曾到家里看过我们来着。
4. 他的小名叫什么来着？

Last month when they were around this district, they dropped in and saw us.

What was his pet name then?

历来 líái

1. 这家伙顽固得要死，而且历来就是如此。
2. 我们历来认为，只有诚实才是上策。
3. 这种风俗历来就有。

always; constantly

That fellow is as stubborn as a mule, and *that is always the case* with him.

We have *constantly* held that honesty is the best policy.

The custom has been handed down *from time immemorial*.

(from time immemorial 有“自古以来”之意。)

立即 níj

1. 我立即给她挂了个电话。
2. 一有消息，我立即就通知你。
3. 心力衰竭往往立即导致死亡。
4. 他听了这消息，心立即就凉了。
5. 我立即就来。
6. 警方立即就找到了匪窟。
7. 受伤者立即送往医

immediately; at once

I rang her up *right away*.

I'll let you know *as soon as* I get the news.

Heart failure often causes *immediate* death.

His heart sank at the news.

I'll come *at once* (or, *in less than no time*).

The police *promptly* located the den.

The wounded were sent to the hospi-

院。

tal without delay.

立刻 lìkè

见“立即” lìjí p. 102

连 lián

I. 表示“连续” — in succession

参阅“接连” jiēlián 条 p. 84

1. 她连获三个冠军。

She has won three championships *in succession*.

2. 他因连犯同样的错误而被开除。

He got the sack for *repeating* the same mistake.

II. 表示“包括” — including

1. 连运费在内, 你应交五百元。

You have to pay \$ 500, *including* shipping charges.

III. 表示“甚至” — even

1. 他给她写了三封信, 可是她连一封也不回。

He wrote her three letters, but she didn't bother to answer once.

2. 这个我连想都没想过。

I haven't *even* thought of it.

连连 liánlián

repeatedly

1. 他们连连催他到美国去。

They urged him *again and again* to go to the States.

2. 卖方连连让价, 以求做成这笔买卖。

The seller made *one price concession after another* to get the deal signed.

3. 敌人连连吃了败仗。

The enemy have suffered *repeated* defeats.

4. 这几天物价连连上涨。

a) Prices have been boosted in the last few days.

b) Prices have *repeatedly* gone up these few days.

连忙 liánmáng

见“赶紧” gǎnjīn p. 50

另外 língwài

见“此外” cǐwài p. 26

屡次 lǚcì

time and again

1. 他父亲曾屡次告诫他不要赌博。
2. 他屡次给她写信, 以表达爱慕之情。
3. 他屡次产生怀疑, 不知她到底喜不喜欢他。
4. 他父母屡次告诫他, 这样下去等于毁了自己。

His father warned him *over and over again* not to gamble.

He wrote to her *many times* to express his admiration for her.

a) *Time and again* he had doubts on whether she cared for him or not.

b) He had *recurring* doubts as to whether she cared for him.

His parents warned him, *time after time*, that he was ruining himself.

论 lùn

in terms of

1. 论能力, 她比其他人都胜一筹。
2. 论门户, 这两人倒是挺配的。
3. 论理, 他这人应该发迹才是, 可是不知为什么, 就是不得意。
4. 论年纪, 我们得承认他干了不少活。
5. 论相貌, 她真称得上绝代佳人了。
6. 论财力, 这个企业

So far as ability goes, she is a notch above the others.

As for family status, the couple is well-matched.

He *ought to* have made a success in the world, and yet he failed somehow.

Considering his age, we must admit that he has done a lot of work.

In appearance she really deserved to be called a rare beauty.

In terms of financial capacity the cor-

首屈一指。

poration is second to none.

马上 mǎshàng

见“立即” lìjǐ p. 102

满 mǎn

fully; extremely

1. 这么漂亮的一个姑娘，因为车祸破了相，叫人看着满伤心的。

It's *really* heart-rending to see such a pretty girl scarred in a traffic accident.

2. 他那会儿满骄傲的，我简直受不了。

He was then *so* puffed up with pride, I just couldn't bear him.

3. 他进屋时带着一副满不高兴的样子。

He stepped into the room with *such* a sullen look.

4. 我满以为他不会拒绝我们的要求的。

I had *fully* believed that he would not have refused our request.

5. 你感到意外，倒是满有理由的。

Well might you be surprised!

6. 你满可以不来嘛。

You could *very well* not come.

7. 她开车总是快得要死，而且满不在乎。

She often drives at breakneck speed and just doesn't care *in the least*.

8. 他满有信心地调查这件事。

He went into the matter with *full* confidence.

满意 mǎnyì

be satisfied

1. 她对目前的工资十分满意。

She is perfectly *content* with her present salary.

(content 本身是形容词，只能作 predicative [表语]，不能作 attribute [定语]，如不能说 She is wearing a content smile on her face. 一她脸上露出满意的微笑，应改为：She

2. 我对你的解释感到非常满意。
 is wearing a *contented* smile.)
 a) I *am* quite *satisfied* with your explanation.
 b) Your explanation *satisfies* me perfectly.
 c) Your explanation *is* entirely *satisfactory*.
3. 我们对你的工作都很满意。
 We *are* quite *pleased* with your work.
- 慢慢 mǎnmàn
 1. 医生觉察到病人慢慢地好起来了。
 The doctor noticed a *gradual* improvement in his patient.
 2. 你慢慢就会掌握这种语言的。
 You'll master the language *step by step*.
 3. 她慢慢会回心转意的。
 She'll come around *by and by*.
 4. 对他只能慢慢来。
 You must be *patient* with him.
- 没想到 méixiǎngdào
 见“不料” bùliào p. 20
- 每当 měidāng
 1. 每当女儿表示要去参加舞会，他都坚决反对。
Whenever his daughter wished to go to a ball, he would put his foot down.
 2. 每当我去看他，他都是忙得不可开交。
Each time I called on him, he was up to his eyes in work.
- 每逢 měiféng
 见“每当” měidāng p. 106

猛然 měngrán

1. 他对这事想了很久才猛然醒悟自己错了。
2. 汽车在一个小孩跟前猛然刹住。
3. 听到她这些刺耳的话，老人不禁猛然大怒。
4. 我猛然想起，忘了带钱包。
5. 房门猛然打开，三个人闯了进来。
6. 她猛然转身，几乎撞在别人身上。

abruptly; suddenly

Having given the matter a lot of thought, he *suddenly* came to see his mistake.

a) The car *jerked* (or, *screeched*) to a stop before a small child.

b) The car came to an *abrupt* stop before a small child.

The old man *flared up* at her harsh words.

All of a sudden, I remembered I had forgotten my purse.

The door *burst open*, and three men rushed into the room.

She turned so *abruptly* that she almost bumped into somebody.

免不了 miǎnbuliǎo

1. 谁也免不了要犯错误。
2. 在试验的最初阶段，问题总是免不了会有的。
3. 他口吃得厉害，所以他的演说免不了要失败。
4. 因为她贪图金钱而结婚，老朋友都免不了跟她疏远。
5. 那孩子是那么的

hard to avoid; be bound to

One *can hardly avoid making* mistakes.

In the first phase of experimentation problems *are bound to* crop up.

He stammered so badly, it was *inevitable* that his speech should fall flat.

It was *only natural* that her old friends should leave her when she married into money.

The child is so cute that people *can't*

- 爱, 谁也免不了要夸她一番。 *help praising her.*
6. 碰上这种事情, 恐怕谁也免不了。 *That's something which might happen to any one.*
7. 那恐怕是免不了的。 *It can't be helped, I think.*

免得 miǎnde

1. 你最好早点动身, 免得赶不上火车。 *so as not to*
a) You had better set out early *so as not to* miss the train.
b) You had better set out early *in order not to* miss the train.
2. 你应该把作文再看一遍, 免得出拼写的错误。 *You should go through your composition once more to avoid spelling mistakes.*
3. 他把课文的要点给我讲了一遍, 免得我再从头温习。 *He explained the main points of the text for me, and it saved my going over it again.*
4. 他们把数字仔细检查了一遍, 免得出错。 *They went over the data lest they should make any mistakes.*
(*lest* 一词是书面语, 口语中很少用。)
5. 你最好穿上毛衣, 免得着凉。 *You had better put on your sweater, or you may catch cold.*
6. 免得麻烦你了, 还是我自己来吧。 *To save you the trouble, I'll do it myself.*

明明 míngmíng

1. 他明明错了, 可就是不认帐。 *plainly; obviously*
It was clear that he was in the wrong, and yet he refused to admit it.
2. 他明明是强盗, 偏 *He is obviously a gangster, but he pre-*

- 偏要装圣贤。 tends to be a saint.
3. 他那些话明明是个借口。 What he said was *evidently* a pretext.
4. 他明明在撒谎，可他们还是相信他的话。 *It was as plain as daylight that he was lying, but they swallowed his words all the same.*
(plain as daylight 是个 phrase, 即“清清楚楚”之意。)
5. 这不幸的消息明明是真的，可人们就是不愿意相信。 *No doubt, the sad news was true, but people just refused to believe it.*
6. 他明明可以坐公共汽车，却偏要走着去。 He walked *when he might have taken a bus.*
(when 在这里含 *although* 的意思。)
7. 他明明知道后果是什么，可他照样去赌。 He was *quite* (or, *fully*) aware of the consequence, and yet he went on gambling as usual.

真不是 mòbushì

见“莫非” mǒfēi p. 109

莫非 mǒfēi

- is it possible that
1. 他早上没来电话，莫非他忘了吗？ He didn't call up this morning. *Can it be that he forgot it?*
2. 莫非你没看出来他俩已经好上了吗？ *Can't you see that they have fallen for each other?*
3. 莫非她就是我要找的那种女孩子？ Is it possible that she is the kind of girl I'm looking for?
4. 莫非就这样让他们欺负不成？ Are we to let them bully us this way?
5. 莫非我当初没跟你 a) *Didn't I ever tell you so?*

说这个吗?

b) *You mean I never told you about this?*

6. 莫非是我错了?

Could it be my fault?

7. 莫非你觉得这样要求不是太过分了吗?

Don't you think you have asked too much?

莫过于 mòguòyú

nothing is more ... than

1. 班上最好的学生莫过于他了。

He's next to no one in class.

2. 最严厉的刑法莫过于死刑。

There is no punishment more severe than the death penalty.

3. 最大的悲哀莫过于冷漠无情。(哀莫大于心死)

There is nothing worse than apathy.

末了 moliǎo

见“终于” zhōngyú p. 190

目前 mùqián

at present

1. 他极力想赢得她的爱情,但到目前为止还未成功。

He is trying hard to win her love, but so far has not succeeded.

2. 这钱你可以拿去使,目前我还用不着。

You can have the money. I don't need it at present.

3. 医生目前正忙着,请在两点钟来吧。

The doctor is very busy at the moment. Please come at two.

4. 到目前为止,他们还没给我们回话。

They haven't given us an answer up till now.

5. 我看目前局势几天内不会好转。

I don't think the current situation will change for the better in a few days.

6. 我们目前正忙着研

Just now (or, Right now) we are busy

究工作，恐怕抽不出人手来。

doing research work. I doubt if we can spare anybody.

哪怕 nǎpà

1. 照他这样子赌下去，哪怕他再有钱，也会毁掉他的。
2. 哪怕一个晚上不睡觉，我也得把一切都准备出来。
3. 这个家哪怕再寒酸，也是自己的家。
4. 哪怕你再努力，这试验也不会有什么结果。

even if; no matter how

However (or, No matter how) rich he may be, he is bound to ruin himself if he goes on gambling like this.

I'll get everything ready, even if I have to stay up all night.

Be it ever so humble (or, Let it be ever so humble), there is no place like home.

Try as you may, you will get nowhere with this experiment.

哪儿 nǎr

1. 你这一早上都上哪儿去啦?
2. 你上哪儿去我也上哪儿去。
3. 我不知道她在哪儿。
4. 我上星期天哪儿也没去。
5. 你帮了这么大的忙，我真不知道怎么感谢你才好? ——哪儿的话，这是我应该做的。

where

Where have you been all morning?

I'll go wherever you go.

I don't know her whereabouts.

a) I didn't go anywhere last Sunday.

b) I went nowhere last Sunday.

c) I stayed in all day last Sunday.

How can I thank you enough for your great help? — You don't have to. It's only what I should do.

6. 我哪儿知道他想跟我们一块儿去呢: *How was I to know he wanted to go with us?*
- 难道** nándào 见“莫非” mǒfēi p. 109
- 难怪** nánguài 见“怪不得” guàibude p. 56
- 难免** nánmiǎn 见“免不了” miǎnbuliǎo p. 107
- 难以** nányǐ difficult to
1. 山色之美, 难以形容。 *The beauty of the mountain scenery is beyond description.*
 2. 他的行为实在叫人难以容忍。 *His behaviour is just intolerable.*
 3. 他说的话令人难以置信。 *What he has said is unbelievable (or, ... is hard to believe).*
 4. 这种事情是难以解释的。 *This sort of thing is difficult to explain (or, ... inexplicable).*
 5. 这消息无疑是从这个部门走漏出去的, 但到底是谁走漏则难以确定。 *The leakage of information seems without doubt to have come from this department, but it cannot be pinned down to any particular person.*
- 宁可** nìngkě would rather
1. 我宁可一个人干。 *I prefer to work alone.*
 2. 他宁可呆在家里也不愿跟她出去。
 - a) He preferred staying at home to going out with her.
 - b) He preferred to stay at home rather than go out with her.
 3. 我今天晚上宁可去看戏。 *I would much rather go to the theater this evening.*

4. 我相信她宁可死也不愿和这么一个人结婚。
I'm sure she would *rather die than marry such a man.*

碰巧 pèngqiǎo

it so happened that; by chance

1. 他们碰巧在路上遇见了。
They *happened to meet* on the way.
2. 我妹妹结婚时, 我碰巧在美国。
It so happened that I was in the States (or, I *chanced to be* in the States) when my younger sister got married.
3. 碰巧我那天身上带着点钱。
As it happened, I had some money with me that day.
4. 他正缺钱用的时候, 碰巧找到一个工作。
As luck would have it, he got a job when he was in difficulties.
5. 我正要去见她, 她碰巧来了。
I was going to go to see her when she turned up.

偏偏 piān

见“偏偏” piānpian p. 113

偏偏 piānpian

I 表示故意反着做

1. 他太太再三劝他买一个新洗衣机, 可他偏偏不同意。
His wife tried hard to get him to buy a new washer, but he *just* wouldn't agree.
2. 他本来是可以上大学的, 偏偏要去当工人。
He preferred to be a worker *when* he might have gone to university.
(注意 “when” 在这里作 although 解。)
3. 需要他帮忙的时候, 他偏偏又走了。
He *must needs* go away just when I want his help.
(needs 在这里是 adverb, 与 must 同用, 含

有“非要如何如何”之意,带讽刺口气。)

II 表示“事与愿违”

1. 那场比赛我们对她原抱很大希望,可他偏偏不争气。
2. 结果偏偏跟我们的愿望相反。

We did expect much of him in the game, but he *simply* let us down.

The result turned out *quite contrary* to our expectations.

III 表示“单单”的意思

1. 我们都到了,偏偏又是他没有来。
2. 你为什么偏偏要干这种事呢?

We were all present, and it was he *alone* who didn't come up again.

Why should you do such a thing, *of all things*?

· 碰巧 piānqiǎo

见“碰巧” pèngqiǎo p. 113

· 频频 pínpín

1. 他们频频招手,以示惜别。
2. 虽然他父亲对他频频告诫,他还是照样去赌。
3. 他频频点头,表示赞同。
4. 日来物价频频上涨。

again and again; repeatedly

They waved their hands *again and again* to show their reluctance to part.

Although his father warned him *over and over again* (or, *time and time again*), he went on gambling as usual.

He nodded *repeatedly* in approval.

a) Prices have been boosted in the last few days.

b) Prices have gone up more than once in the last few **days**.

· 平常 píngcháng

1. 那孩子平常一清早就上学。

I. 表示“平时” — usually

Generally the boy goes to school early in the morning.

2. 跟平常一样, 我们
九点开始办公。
As usual, we began working at 9:00.
3. 他平常就上俱乐部
去吃早饭。
As a rule, he has his lunch at the club.
4. 我们平常都是在星
期六下午去买东西。
Ordinarily we go shopping on Saturday afternoons.
5. 我们平常不大进
城。
We seldom go to town.
6. 他平常不爱说话。
Normally he is man of few words.
7. 她平常不那样。
She was not like that before.

II. 表示“一般”“普通” — ordinary; common

1. 这不是个平常日
子, 今天是圣诞节。
This is no ordinary day. It's X'mas!
2. 水仙在福建是很平
常的花。
Narcissus is very common in Fukien Province.
3. 北京下雪是很平常
的事。
Snow in Beijing is a common occurrence.
4. 他平常很少迟到。
It's rare (or, It's uncommon) for him to come late.

平时 píngshí

见“平常” píngcháng p. 114

平昔 píngxī

in the past

1. 我们平昔处得极
好, 可是她如今富
贵了, 那又是另一
回事。
We got along very well in the old days, but she is rich now and that's quite another story.
2. 他平昔最爱逛旧书
摊, 看一些自己买
不起的书。
He used to go to the second-hand bookstalls and read the books he couldn't afford to buy.

3. 他平昔是个很谨慎的人,我简直不懂他怎会卷进政治问题里去。
- He was very prudent in former times. I just cannot make out how he got involved in political troubles.

其次 qícì

参阅“首先” shǒuxiān p. 131 第 2、3、4 例

其实 qíshí

actually; in fact

1. 其实,他也是刚走。
In fact, he has just left.
2. 其实这还真不是他的错。
It was *really* not his fault.
3. 他瞧着像个正人君子,其实是个坏蛋。
He looks like honesty itself but *actually* he is a rogue.
4. 其实她对丈夫非常不好。
As a matter of fact, she treated her husband very badly.

岂不是 qībúshì

1. 这岂不是本末倒置吗?
Wouldn't that amount to putting the cart before the horse?
2. 这岂不是挺可笑吗?
Isn't it ridiculous?

岂但 qīdàn

not only

1. 我们的产品岂但要求数量多,而且也要质量好。
In production we demand *not only* quantity but also quality.
2. 岂但他儿子,连他女儿都出国留学了。
Both his son *and* his daughter are studying abroad.
3. 他岂但给她钱,同
a) He gave her advice *as well as* mon-

- 时也给她忠告。 ey.
b) *In addition to money, he gave her advice.*
- 岂非 qǐfēi 见“岂不是” qǐbúshì p. 116
- 恰好 qiàhǎo 见“刚好” gānghǎo p. 51
- 恰恰 qiàqià exactly; just
That's *exactly* what I want.
1. 我要的恰恰就是这个。
2. 我的手表这时恰恰是六点。
3. 恰恰相反，我并
不想去看电影。
4. 恰恰相反，他从
不喝酒。
5. 他怎么恰恰在这
个时候来了？
- a) *The time on my watch is six to the dot.*
b) *My watch says six exactly (sharp).*
Just the opposite, I don't want to go to the movies.
Quite the contrary, he never drinks.
Why should he come at this moment, of all moments?
- 恰巧 qiàqiǎo 见“碰巧” pèngqiǎo p. 113
- 千万 qiānwàn be sure
a) *Be sure to come on Sunday!*
b) *Do come on Sunday!*
1. 星期天千万来啊！
2. 过马路千万要留神。
3. 千万别再干这事了。
4. 千万不要低估自己的潜力。
5. 千万不要把事情张
- Be very careful when you cross the street.*
You must never do it again.
Never underestimate your own potentials.
It's imperative that we hush up the

扬出去。

thing.

前后 qián-hòu

1. 他前后等了一个钟头。
He waited for an hour *or so*.
2. 她是在两点前后来
的。
She came at *about* (or, at *around*) two o'clock.
3. 他们是在1960年
前后到这儿来定居
的。
They came and settled down here *round about* 1960.
4. 他来借过三次钱,
前后欠我两千元。
He came and borrowed money three times and has owed me 2,000 dollars *altogether*.
5. 她前后至少结过四
次婚。
She has been married at least four times.
6. 他前后一共当了三
年系主任。
He was head of the department *one time or another* for three years.

轻轻(地) qīngqīng(di)

gently; lightly

1. 月亮幽幽地照,微
风轻轻地吹,啊,
夜何其宁静!
The quiet moon was shining; a *gentle* breeze was blowing, and what a serene night!
2. 她轻轻地向他倾吐
她那火一般的激
情。
She unbosomed herself of her burning passion to him *in a soft voice*.
3. 她轻轻地走到那熟
睡的孩子的前。
She *tiptoed* to the bedside of the sleeping child.
4. 她拿了一条毛毯轻
轻地盖在睡着了
的孩子身上。
She placed a blanket *ever so lightly* over her sleeping child.
5. 他轻轻地关上门,
He closed the door *quietly* in order not

免得吵醒太太。

to wake his wife.

轻易(地) qīngyì(dì)

rashly; easily

1. 他不会轻易地答应帮忙,可是一旦答应了,就绝不食言。
2. 你不应该这么轻易就下结论。
3. 他常常是很轻易就答应了别人。
4. 这个工作不是很轻易就做得来的。

He wouldn't promise to help *in a casual way*, because he would never break his word once he promised.

You shouldn't *jump to conclusions* like that.

He often makes *rash* promises.

It's no *easy* job.

全都 quándōu

all, entirely

1. 他一家子全都来了!
2. 人全都到了吗?
3. 她把朋友全都请来参加她的生日宴会。
4. 我们全都赞成这个决定。
5. 我看这不能全都怪他。
6. 敌人全都消灭了。

His *whole* family has come!

Is *everybody* here?

She invited *all* her friends to her birthday party.

We are *one and all* in favour of the decision.

I don't think it's *entirely* his fault.

The enemy was *completely* wiped out.

全力 quánlì

all-out; spare no effort

1. 警方正全力以赴,以制止贩毒。
2. 当地居民全力支持这场反对吸毒的运动。
3. 这商号全力争取海

The police are *going all out* to put a stop to drug trafficking.

The local residents gave *all-out* support to the movement against drug taking.

The firm *made every* (or, *spared no*)

外订单。

4. 他竭尽全力讨好老板。

effort to secure orders from abroad.

He took great pains to please his boss.

全面 quánmiàn

1. 他全面负责，管理这个企业。

2. 她对她的性格作了一个全面的分析。

3. 希特勒对同盟国发动了一场全面战争。

4. 他们为明年生产进行了全面规划。

5. 我们必须学会全面观察事物。

6. 他们对他采取全面否定的态度。

overall; comprehensive

a) He was in *full* charge of the enterprise.

b) He took *overall* charge of the enterprise.

He made a *comprehensive* analysis of her character.

Hitler waged a *full-scale* war against the Allies.

They made an *overall* plan for next year's production.

We must learn to look at things *all-sidedly* (or, ... look at things from an *overall* view).

They adopted an attitude of *total* repudiation toward him.

全然 quánrán

1. 他帮助朋友进行实验，全然不考虑个人得失。

2. 西南非的白人统治者全然不把黑人当人看待。

3. 他似乎全然不了解企业的情况。

4. 分离了二十多年，

completely; entirely

In helping his friends with their experiment, he *gave no thought* to his personal gain or loss.

The white rulers of the Southwest Africa *simply* do not treat the blacks as human beings.

It seems he was *completely* ignorant of what's what about the enterprise.

Having parted for over twenty years,

- 他们全然认不出对方了。
they became *utter* strangers to each other.
5. 他一口咬定对此事全然不知。
He insisted that he knew *nothing whatever* about the matter.
- 确实** quèshí 见“的确” díquè p. 40
- 彻头彻尾** quètóuquèwěi out-and-out
1. 这家伙是个彻头彻尾的骗子。
That guy is a *downright* cheat.
2. 这是个彻头彻尾的骗局。
It's a *sheer* (or, *downright*) fraud.
3. 他说的是彻头彻尾的谎话。
What he said is a *palpable* (or, *downright, absolute, barefaced*) lie.
4. 那是个彻头彻尾的谬论。
a) That's an *out-and-out* (or, *a 100 per cent*) fallacy.
b) That's fallacy *through-and-through*.
5. 他是个彻头彻尾的伪君子。
He is a *hypocrite to the quick*.
- 然而** rán'ér but; however
1. 他本来希望能弄到马戏票的, 然而最后还是没弄着。
He had hoped to get some tickets for the circus, *but* he found at the last minute that he couldn't make it.
2. 他对自己能否成功毫无把握, 然而他愿意一试。
He wasn't sure he could succeed; *however*, he would try.
3. 他并不喜欢这个人, 然而他还是会同他渡过难关。
He didn't like the man; *nevertheless*, he would see him through the difficulty.
4. 这消息简直令人难
They news is inconceivable, *and yet* it

以置信，然而却是真的。

is true.

5. 尽管我们一再劝他，然而他还是照样去赌。

In spite of all the advice we gave him, he took to gambling as usual.

(in spite of 本身是“尽管”之意，而中文的“尽管”则往往与“然而”连用。)

仍旧 réngjiù

见“仍然” réngrán p. 122

仍然 réngrán

still; yet

1. 她明知此事不易，但仍然愿意一试。
2. 她这人又蠢又爱慕虚荣，不过仍然有不少人追求她。
3. 尽管这种男式新时装得到大力推广，却仍然流行不起来。
4. 你的话也许很有道理，不过他们仍然坚持他们的看法。
5. 他虽然有错，我仍然爱他。
6. 这支票仍然有效。
7. 她仍然跟以前一样漂亮。

She knew it wasn't an easy job, but she *still* wanted to have a try at it.

She was vain and foolish, *and yet* many people ran after her.

The new style in men's suits didn't take, *despite* all attempts to popularize it.

There may be much point in what you say, they adhere to their own opinion *all the same*.

For all his faults, I love him *none the less*.

The cheque *remains* valid.

She looks *as pretty as ever*.

日趋 rìqū

见“日益” rìyì p. 122

日益 rìyì

gradually; day by day

1. 近年来，香港的旅

In recent years, tourism has been on

- 游业日益繁荣。
 2. 我们衷心祝愿祖国日益繁盛。
 3. 看到你身体日益康复, 我们感到很高兴。
 4. 他的健康日益衰退。
 5. 姑嫂之间的隔阂日益加深。
 6. 过于娇宠的儿童势必养成日益自私的性格。

the rise in Hong Kong.

We heartily wish our motherland *ever* growing prosperity.

We are delighted to see you recovering *day by day*.

His health is failing him *daily*.

Misunderstanding between the two sisters-in-law are becoming *increasingly* grave.

The child that is indulged without restraint grows *more and more* selfish.

如果 rúguǒ

1. 如果下雨就别等我了。
 2. 如果你要他来, 他就来。
 3. 如果她拒绝了, 你怎么办?
 4. 如果不是你帮忙的话, 这事情我怕是办不成了。
 5. 我如果见到她, 就替你说说。
 6. 如果你接受这些条件, 我们就签这合同。

if; in case

In case it rains, don't expect me.

He will come *if* you need him.

Suppose she refuses, what will you do?

a) *But for* your help, I might have failed.

b) I might have failed without your help.

(without 常可用来表示条件。)

I will put in a word for you *when* I see her.

We will sign the contract *provided*(*that*) you accept the terms.

(provided [that] 在这里等于 if, 但真正含义

- 是“…为条件”，即：“你只有…我才…”，亦即 **on condition that**，因此，不能以为凡是用 **if** 的地方，都可以用 **provided** 来代替，如 **What will happen if they see me?** 就不能用 **provided** 代替 **if**。但是，在一切可用 **provided for** 的地方，倒是可用 **if** 来代替的。)
7. 如果有人肯支付我的费用，我就去。
 a) I will go *providing* my expenses are paid.
 (providing 等于 provided that.)
 b) I will go *on the condition* (or, *on the understanding*) that my expenses are paid.
 I will render financial help, *circumstances permitting*.
 (注意：这是一种独立结构。)
8. 如果环境许可，我一定在经济上予以援手。
Being restored to his perfect health, he will go back to work.
 (这种句式，也是一种独立结构，但作 *participle phrase* 分析也无不可。)
9. 如果身体完全康复，他就重新投入工作。
Unless you work hard, you can't expect to win quick promotion.
10. 如果你不努力工作，你别想很快得到提升。

如今 rújīn

- now; at the present time
1. 如今的世道不一样了。
 Things are quite different *today*.
2. 不管你怎么想，他如今已经抖起来了。
 Like it or not, he has got on in the world.
3. 他如今可神气呢。
 Now he is as proud as a peacock.
4. 这歌如今非常流行。
 The song is very popular *at present* (or, *these days*).

稍稍 shāoshāo

见“稍微” shāowēi p. 125

稍微 shāowēi

a little; slightly

1. 这汤稍微欠一点盐。

The soup needs *a trifle* more salt.

2. 我觉得稍微有点累了。

I feel *a little* tired now.

3. 病人已经能稍微坐起来了。

The patient is well *enough* to sit up *a little*.

4. 这新鞋稍微有点夹脚。

The new shoes pinch *slightly*.

5. 病人今天似乎稍微好了一些。

The patient *seems a shade* better today.

6. 喝了一瓶啤酒，她稍微有点醉意了。

Having finished a bottle of beer, she felt *a bit* tipsy.

7. 请稍微等一会儿。

Just a minute, please.

稍许 shāoxǔ

见“稍微” shāowēi p. 125

时常 shícháng

见“经常” jīngcháng p. 92

十分 shífēn

very; extremely

1. 我们十分重视他的意见。

We attached *great* importance to his advice.

2. 警方最近对此事十分注意。

The matter has lately received *considerable* (or, *keen, close, sufficient*) attention from the police.

3. 我认为把这一事实通知你们是十分必要的。

I think it *highly* desirable to tell you the fact.

4. 大家都为他错过这一机会而感到十分

We all felt *terrible* (or, *awfully, very*) sorry for his missing the chance.

惋惜。

5. 他听到那个消息十分高兴。
a) He was *quite* delighted at the news.
b) He was *exceedingly* pleased at the news.
6. 他十分钟爱小女儿。
He cherished a *deep* love for his little daughter.
7. 通货膨胀使他陷入十分困难的境地。
Inflation drove him to *extreme* difficulty.
8. 他十分注意地听着, 不肯漏掉一个字。
He listened *attentively* so as not to miss a word.
9. 他十分生气, 一时连话都说不上来了。
He was *so* angry *that* he could not speak.
10. 我十分高兴接受你的建议。
I am *only too* glad to accept your offer.
11. 这次演出十分精彩。
The performance is *simply* marvellous.
12. 浪费十分惊人。
The waste is *most* surprising.
13. 我对他一向十分钦佩。
I have always admired him *greatly*.
14. 他对她十分爱慕。
He is her *gallant* (or, *ardent*, *fervent*) admirer.
15. 他十分热爱拜伦的作品。
He is a *warm* (or, *great*) admirer of Byron's works.
16. 他的语言学知识十分渊博。
He has a *profound* (or, *a broad*, *a comprehensive*, *an extensive*) knowledge of languages.
17. 他对儿子这门亲事十分高兴。
He is *more than* pleased with his son's marriage.
18. 他对女儿的亲事感到十分失望。
He is *very much* dissatisfied in his daughter's marriage.
19. 他对她十分温存。
a) He was *all* gentleness to her.

b) To her he was gentleness itself.

c) To her he was as gentle as gentle could be.

(a) 例: all + 抽象名词; b) 例: 抽象名词 + itself 和 c) 例 as + 形容词 + as + 原形容词 + can be 都可起到强调作用, 含“十分”之意。)

20. 我十分喜欢这本书。

I like this book *ever so much*.

(*ever so* 是口语体。)

21. 她走了很长时间的
路, 觉得十分疲倦
了。

She was *good and tired* after a long walk.

(*good and* + 形容词, 等于“十分”或“非常”之意。也可用 *nice and, fine and, rare and* 等。例如: The house is *nice and cool*. 一 这房子十分凉快。She was *rare and hungry*. 一 她饿极了。)

十足 shízú

见“彻头彻尾” quètóuquèwěi p. 121

实际上 shíjìshang

in fact

1. 他常常装出一副圣人的样子, 实际上却是个十足的伪君子。

He often puts on the appearance of a saint, but *in fact* (or, *in reality*), he is an out-and-out hypocrite.

2. 他的长相显得很凶, 他的为人实际上很厚道。

He looks a little fierce, but *at heart* (or, *actually*) he is kind.

3. 我们已经赔偿了他的损失, 所以这件事情实际上就算解决了。

We have made compensation for his losses, and the matter is *as good as settled*.

(*as good as* 含“相当于”或“等于”之意。)

4. 实际上, 你离不开

Practically speaking, you can't do with-

- 她。
 5. 你的想法倒是真妙，可实际上恐怕行不通。
 6. 她说她晚上有事，实际上却没有。
 7. 要不是生病的话，她就去跳舞了，可实际上她只好呆在家里。
 8. 他实际上是个伪君子。
 9. 他刚才说的实际上是一片谎言。

out her.

Your idea is indeed excellent, but I'm afraid it won't work *in practice*.

She said she was engaged for the evening but *as a matter of fact* she had nothing on.

If she were not ill, she would go to the dance. *As it is*, she has to stay at home.

He is a hypocrite *at heart* (or, *deep down*).

What he has said is *virtually* a lie.

实在 shízài

1. 她实在了不起。
 2. 认识你实在高兴!
 3. 他这人实在好，我们都喜欢他。
 4. 今天的功课实在不容易。
 5. 我实在是一点也不了解这件事情。
 6. 我实在不知道这件事情。

indeed; really

She is *really* marvellous!

I'm *real* pleased to meet you!

(real 在此作 adverb, 是口语体, 不必改 really.)

He is *indeed* a very good man; we all take to him.

The homework for today is *by no means* easy.

(by no means 本是“实在不”或“绝非”之意。)

In truth, I don't know anything about this.

a) I know nothing about it *for sure*.

b) *Honestly*, I know nothing about it.

时而……时而…… shí'ér ... shí'ér ...

见“忽而……忽而……” hu'ér ... hu'ér ...
p. 69

始终 shǐzhōng

from beginning to end

1. 我们在乡下的时候，始终在下雨。

It rained *all the time* when we were in the countryside.

2. 战争期间，她始终在一个野战医院里当护士。

Throughout the war, she was working in a field hospital as a nurse.

3. 她弟弟跟女朋友偷偷约会的事，她始终都晓得。

When her brother secretly dated with his girlfriend, she knew it *all along*.
(all along = all the time; or, from the start.)

4. 她对丈夫的爱始终不渝。

She *remained* faithful to her husband to the end of her life.

事后 shìhòu

afterwards

1. 他去年没有考上，事后很用功，今年秋天大概能录取了。

Last year he failed in the entrance examination. *Since then*, he has been working very hard, so he may be admitted this fall.

2. 她把那逃学的儿子狠狠地揍了一顿，可事后又后悔得不得了。

She gave her son a good beating for his playing truant, but *afterwards* she was overcome with regret.

3. 她事后才告诉父亲她结婚了。

a) It *wasn't until* she got married *that* she told her father.

b) She *didn't* tell her father *till* she got married.

- 事前** shìqián in advance; beforehand
1. 我要是不能来，事前一定给你打个招呼。
I'll let you know *beforehand* if I can't come.
 2. 你最好事前跟他商量一下，然后我们再看看怎么办。
You had better go and consult him, *and then* we'll see what's to be done.
(and then 虽是“然后”，但前句必然隐含“事前”之意。)
 3. 我们事前可以作一个大概的估计。
We can make out a rough estimate *in advance*.
- 事实上** shìshíshàng 见“实际上” shíjìshàng p. 127
- 事先** shìxiān 见“事前” shìqián p. 130
- 是否** shǐfǒu whether ... or not
1. 他是否同意，我并没有把握。
I'm not sure *whether* he'll agree *or not*.
 2. 我说不上来，他是否得到那个工作。
I cannot tell *whether or no* he got the job.
(whether or no 一般不像 whether ... or not 那样可以拆开来用，这一句当然也可改为 ... whether he got the job or not.)
 3. 我问过他是否能来参加会议。
I asked him *if* he could come to the meeting.
 4. 你是否(要)坐的士去?
Are you going by taxi?
 5. 你是否坐的士去(为好)?
Don't you think you had better go by taxi?
 6. 你是否觉得累了?
You are tired, aren't you?

首先(……其次) shǒuxiān ... (... qíci) first

1. 我们首先访问日本, 然后去澳大利亚。
We *first* visited Japan and then Australia.
2. 我不跟你们去美国了。首先, 我没有钱, 其次, 我没时间。
I am not going to the States with you. *For one thing*, I can't afford it; *for another*, I've no time.
3. 我觉得这本书不怎么样。首先, 我不喜欢它的情节; 其次, 我不喜欢它的笔调。
I don't think much of this book. *To begin with*, I don't like its plot; *secondly*, I don't like its style.
4. 首先是内容, 其次才是形式。
Content should *come first*, form *second*.
5. 我爱看文艺作品, 首先我最喜欢剧本。
I enjoy reading literature, and *above all*, I like drama.
6. 如果你想发音正确, 首先应研究语音学。
If you want to learn to pronounce correctly, you must *first of all* study phonetics.
7. 明天我首先要来见你。
I'll come to see you *the first thing* tomorrow.
8. 我认为首先要注意贷款的经济效果。
So far as I can judge, *primary* attention should be paid to the economic effect of the loans.
9. 首先, 我们的方向对了。
To start with (or, *To begin with*), we have correct orientation.

殊不知 shūbùzhī

hardly realize

1. 我还以为他不来了, 殊不知他已经来过。
I thought he wasn't coming. I wasn't to know that he had already been here.

2. 他貌不惊人，殊不知他竟有这么大的学问。
He is indeed ordinary enough and that's why people *never dream* he is such a great scholar.

谁知道 shuízhīdào

见“不料” bùliào p. 20

丝毫 sīháo

(一般用于否定句)

in the slightest degree; not ... at all

1. 像他这样一个浪子，我们丝毫也用不着同情他。
A wastrel like him, we shouldn't, *in the slightest degree*, have sympathy with him.
2. 他丝毫不考虑个人得失。
He gave *no* thought to personal gain or loss.
3. 西山之美全在天然，丝毫没有人工雕饰的痕迹。
The beauty of the Western Hills lies in its being totally natural and *devoid of any* trace of artificial ornamentation.
4. 她丝毫不明白。
She did *not* understand *at all*.

似乎 sīhū

见“好像” hǎoxiàng p. 64

素来 sùlái

见“从来” cónglái p. 28

虽然 suīrán

although

1. 他虽然是个胆小鬼，还是跟着他们去了。
He went with them, *although* he was a coward.
2. 她虽然说要来，结果还是没来。
She said *she* would come; she didn't *though*.
3. 我虽然跟他说过好几次，可他就是不听。
I told him many times, but he wouldn't listen.

4. 虽然刮台风, 他还是上写字楼去了。 He went to the office *in spite of* the typhoon.
5. 虽然你说情况完全相反, 我还是要这样做。 I'll do it this way *for all* you say to the contrary.
(for all = in spite of. 例如: *For all* his wealth, he was not happy. 一他虽然有财, 可并不快乐。)
6. 他虽然有许多缺点, 还是个好学生。 *With all* his shortcomings, he is a good student.
(同 for all 相似, 但 with all 强调“虽然具有”这一点意思。)
7. 他虽然不爱那位由他父母介绍的姑娘, 但还是跟她结婚了。 He did not love the girl introduced by his parents, but married her *nevertheless*.
8. 这工作虽然困难, 但是挺有意思。 a) *While* the work was difficult, it was interesting.
b) The work was, *while* difficult, also interesting.
9. 他虽然年纪小, 还是努力赚钱养家。 *Young as he was* (or, *Young that he was*), he tried his best to support his family.
(这种倒装句式, 同 as 或 that 都含“虽然”, “尽管”之意。)
10. 成绩虽然不突出, 也相当令人满意了。 The achievements, *if* not outstanding, are rather satisfactory.
(if 不一定都作“如果”、“只要”解, 常常含“虽然”、“即使”之意。)
11. 这小店虽然不怎么样, 我们就凑合住一晚吧。 We'll stay for the night in this inn, *such as* it is.
12. 他虽然外貌英俊, His appearance, *however* handsome,

但还是赢不到她的芳心。

does not help him to win her heart.

随便 suībiàn

1. 随便你吧 (随你的便)。
2. 随便你去不去。
3. 随便吃啊!
4. 大家随便一点吧。
5. 咱们随便聊聊吧。
6. 没什么正经事要商量, 不过是老朋友随便叙叙。
7. 大家随便提问题好了。

informal; casual

Do as you pleased.

Whether you go or not is up to you.

Help yourself!

Make yourselves at home.

Let's have a chat.

It is no business appointment, just a casual meeting with old friends.

You are free to ask questions.

所以 suǒyǐ

1. 我的汽车半路上“抛锚”, 所以我上班就晚了。
2. 她出门晚了, 所以没赶上校车。
3. 他因为儿子在学校里酗酒, 所以削减了他每月的开销。
4. 他病了, 所以没到场。
5. 她还没有打扮, 所以我先走了。
6. 我们要在中午以前

so; therefore

My car broke down on the way; so I was late for work.

She left home late and therefore missed the school-bus.

His son took to drinking at the college. For this reason, he cut down the boy's monthly allowance.

He was absent because of illness.

As she was not dressed yet, I went without her.

We started early so as to get there

赶到，所以早早就
动身。

before noon.

索性 suǒxìng

1. 关于这件事情，你索性去跟他谈一谈好了。
2. 你有什么话，就索性说明白了。
3. 看到他们要闯祸，他索性就走开了。

simply

As for this matter, you *may as well* go and have a talk with him.

Come straight to the point!

Finding that they were looking for trouble, he *simply* walked away from there.

倘若 tǎngruò

见“假如” jǐrú p. 80

特别 tèbié

1. 他是个很有名的翻译家，特别擅长于译莎翁的十四行诗。
2. 她对历史特别感兴趣。
3. 有什么你特别喜欢（要买的东西之类）的吗？
4. 他对这门婚事特别高兴。
5. 今年冬天特别暖和。
6. 这一点特别重要，你必须牢牢记住。
7. 他是个特别有天赋的人。

particularly

He is a well-known translator, *especially* good at translating Shakespeare's sonnets.

She is *particularly* interested in history.

Are you interested in anything in *particular*?

He is *more than* pleased with the marriage.

It's *unusually* warm this winter.

This is *even more* important. You must bear it in mind.

He is a man of *extraordinary* genius.

8. 她这人没什么特别的地方。
She is nothing out of the ordinary.
9. 这新洗衣机的质量特别好。
The new washer is of special quality (or, ... is of extra good quality, is of superfine quality).
10. 他这个青年人特别有前途。
He is nothing if not a promising young man.
 (nothing if not 这个短语本意是“如果不是(有前途),(他)就算不了什么了”,所以可译作“特别的”或“份外的”,not后面跟 adjective 也可以,如: *She is nothing if not talkative.* 一她这人特别碎嘴。)
11. 有一点我特别要提出来请你考虑。
One thing among all others I must put forward for your consideration.
 (among others/among other things 这一短语,含强调语气,故可作“特别”解。)
12. 别再说了,特别是别说那些叫她难过的话。
Don't say anything, above all, don't say anything that will hurt her.
13. 关于这次发生的恶作剧,从班上的学生看,他特别可疑。
As for the mischievous trick, he, of all the students in the class, looks most suspicious.

特地 tēdì

1. 他周游世界,特地要跟那些最有学问的人交谈。
specially; purposely
He travelled all over the world purposely to converse with the most learned men.
2. 他特地兼了一份差事,以帮助弟弟念完大学。
He held a concurrent job with a view to helping his brother finish his studies at the university.
 (with a view to 是个 set phrase, to 后应跟 gerund.)

3. 我在华盛顿逗留期间，一些老朋友特地来看我。
When I was staying in Washington, some of my friends came *especially* to see me.

同时 tóngshí

1. 罗斯教授将访华。同时准备在大学里讲学。
Prof. Rose is going to visit China, and *at the same time*, he'll give lectures in some universities.
2. 他在一所学校教英语，同时又给一个新闻通讯社做翻译。
He teaches English at a college *and* does some translation work for a news agency.
3. 他在读这本书的同时，还做了一些笔记。
While reading the book, he took some notes.
4. 他很聪明，同时也很谨慎。
He is clever; *moreover*, he is careful.
5. 他不仅选修了法文，同时还选修了德文。
a) He has taken German, *in addition* to French.
b) He not only takes French, *but also* German.
6. 中国不仅拥有大量的煤，同时，其它矿物也非常丰富。
China possesses enormous quantities of coal, and she is *rich in* other minerals *as well*.

同样 tóngyàng

1. 我认为英语跟法语同样难学。
I think English is *as* difficult to learn *as* French.
2. 这对双胞胎姊妹穿着同样的衣服。
The twin girls wore *similar* dresses.
3. 我想买一个跟你同样牌子的表。
I want to buy the same watch *as* the one you have.

4. 我兄弟跟我同样高。 My brother and I are of the *same* (or, *equal*) height.
5. 对一个人来说, 工作是重要的, 但同样重要的是休息。 It is important for a man to work, but it is *equally* important for him to rest.

痛快 tòngkuai

1. 他们昨天晚上坐游船, 玩得非常痛快。 They enjoyed the boating excursion *very much* last evening.
2. 他们到意大利去新婚旅行, 过得非常痛快。 They made a wedding trip to Italy, and *had a wonderful time*.
3. 他上周末在家里开舞会, 朋友们跳得很痛快。 He gave a home party last week-end, and his friends danced *to their heart's content*.
4. 昨天他们去香港仔, 十分痛快地吃了一顿海鲜。 Yesterday they went to Aberdeen and *had their fill of seafood*.
5. 两个老朋友到了发工资那天便聚一聚, 喝个痛快。 The two old pals often meet on pay day and *drink their fill*.
6. 他很痛快就把书借给我了。 He lent me the book *readily*.
7. 他对她那些刺耳的话感到很痛快。 He felt very *unhappy* at her harsh remarks.
8. 她觉得跟他在一起最痛快。 She liked to be with him *better than* with others.

偷偷地 tōutōudi

见暗地里 àndìli p. 1

突然(间) tūrán(jiān)

abruptly; suddenly

1. 他来得那么突然，我还以为出了什么事哩。
He came so *suddenly* that I thought something must have gone wrong.
2. 汽车突然间停住了。
The car came to an *abrupt* stop.
3. 突然间，反对的意见一下子都没有了。
All of a sudden opposition went like a house of cards.
4. 这消息来得非常突然，我们觉得简直难以相信。
The news came so *unexpectedly*, we all thought it too good to be true.
5. 拂晓，他们对敌军突然发动进攻。
At dawn they launched a *surprise* attack on the enemy.
6. 他常常莫名其妙地突然大笑。
He often *bursts out* laughing for no reason.
7. 看见这个情景，老人突然生气了。
The old man flared up at the sight.
8. 地震突然就发生了。
The earthquake took place *without any warning*.

徒然 túrán

- in vain
1. 他所作的一切努力全属徒然。
All his efforts *went for nothing*.
 2. 他们决定在我们住宅区盖工厂，我们虽提出了抗议，也是徒然。现在我们正设法向政府提交请愿书。
They have decided to put up a factory in our residential district. We have protested *in vain*. Now we are working to lodge a petition with the government.
 3. 我们曾经劝他不要在那买卖上投资，但是我们徒然浪费唇舌。他总是自行
We had tried to talk him out of investing in this business. But it seemed we just *wasted our breath*. He always went his own way.

共是。

外加 wàijiā

1. 地毯价格一万元，外加包装和运费。
2. 地毯价格一万元，外加包装和运费二百元。
3. 她每天学日语六小时，外加练琴三小时。
4. 他人很聪明，外加肯干，将来一定会有成就。
5. 一共有五百多本书，外加各类词典。
6. 他买了三件衬衫，外加两条领带。
7. 他工作过度，外加营养不良，所以就生病了。

in addition to

The price of the carpet is \$ 10,000, packing and freight *extra*.

The price of the carpet is \$ 10,000, and \$ 200 *more* for packing and freight.

She practises piano three hours a day, *in addition to* six hours for studying Japanese.

His intelligence *plus* his willingness to work will bring him success.

There are more than five hundred copies of books, *not including* all kinds of dictionaries.

He bought not only three shirts *but* two ties *as well*.

What with overwork and *what with* under-nourishment, he fell ill.

完全 wánquán

1. 我们完全相信他。
2. 我完全同意这个计划。
3. 她完全不了解这件

completely; fully

a) We have *complete* trust in him.

b) We have *absolute* faith in him.

c) He enjoys our *entire* (or, *full, complete*) confidence.

I *fully* agree to the plan.

She is in *total* ignorance on the matter.

事情。

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 4. 他完全是出于无知才做这蠢事的。 | It was due to <i>sheer</i> ignorance that he did such a foolish thing. |
| 5. 他们的意见完全不一样。 | Their opinions are <i>poles apart</i> . |
| 6. 我把这事情完全给忘了。 | I have forgotten about the <i>whole</i> thing. |
| 7. 你完全弄错了。 | a) You are <i>quite</i> mistaken,
b) You are <i>completely</i> wrong. |
| 8. 你说得完全有理。 | You are <i>perfectly</i> right in what you say. |
| 9. 对于这件事, 我完全没有怪你的意思。 | As for this matter, I do not blame you <i>at all</i> . |
| 10. 这完全是个推测。 | It is a <i>pure (mere)</i> conjecture. |
| 11. 对这种小小的不便之处, 我完全不在乎。 | I can <i>well</i> put up with slight inconveniences like that. |
| 12. 他完全是个伪君子。 | He is a hypocrite to the <i>quick</i> . |

宛如 wǎnrú

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| | just like |
| 1. 农村到处长着庄稼, 宛如铺上一块绿地毯, 这说明丰收在望了。 | The countryside was <i>literally</i> covered with a green carpet of crop, holding a promise of bumper harvest. |
| 2. 她的嗓子很好, 唱起来宛如夜莺一样悦耳。 | Her voice is so sweet that she sounds <i>like</i> a nightingale when she sings. |
| 3. 天空宛如被闪电劈成两半似的。 | It looked <i>as if</i> the sky was split into halves by the lightning. |
| 4. 大雨滂沱, 天空宛如被一道黑幕所遮 | It was pouring. The sky was covered, <i>as it were</i> , with a black curtain. |

蔽。

万分 wànfēn

见“十分” shífēn p. 125

万一 wànyī

if by any chance

1. 我倒是有点想来，
不过，万一下雨的话，
就别等我了。

I have half a mind to come, but *in case* it rains, don't expect me.

2. 万一真是这样，我
还是有办法对付
这个难题的。

Even if this should be the case, we can still tackle the problem.

3. 万一他明天能来，
我就给你去个电话。

If by any chance he can come tomorrow, I'll give you a call.

往常 wǎngcháng

habitually in the past

1. 我往常总是在八点
离开家去上班的。

I *used to* leave for work at eight.

2. 他往常从来没让困
难吓倒过。

He *was never* daunted by difficulties *before*.

3. 跟往常一样，我们
九点开始办公。

As usual, we begin work at nine.

4. 我往常总是在家里
吃完早餐才上班的。

I *generally* have breakfast at home *before* going to office.

5. 她往常是每周给父
亲写一封信。

She *made it a rule* to write to her father once a week.

往往 wǎngwǎng

often; frequently

1. 他中午往往上写字
楼附近那个咖啡馆
去。

He *frequented* the cafe near his office at noon.

2. 她身体单薄，天气

She is *frail* and catches colds *easily*

- 一变，往往就会感冒。
 3. 她出门的时候往往把孩子交她姨照顾。
 4. 人们遇到困难往往会迷信起来。
 5. 小孩往往会得这种病。
- when the weather changes.
 She often went out and left the children to be minded by her aunt.
 People are prone to superstition when they are in wretched plight.
 This is a disease to which small children are liable.

惟独 wéidú

1. 我们都买了那本字典，惟独他不买。
 2. 干这种活，惟独他最合适。
 3. 我知道惟独你一个人了解内情。
 4. 哪天他也不去，惟独这一天去了。

only; alone

We all bought a copy of that dictionary *except* him (or, ... of that dictionary, but *it is otherwise with* him).

He is the *only* man for the job.

I know you *alone* are in the secret.

a) *Of all days* he went that day.

b) He chose to go that day *of all days*.

唯有 wéiyǒu

见“只有……，(才)……” zhǐyǒu ..., (cái) ... p. 187

未必 wěishí

见“实在” shízài p. 128

未必 wèibì

1. 我看他未必肯来。
 2. 我想他未必连这点道理也不懂吧。
 3. 富家子弟未必就有

may not

I don't think he is willing to come.

He has more sense than that, I hope.

(这可以算是一种反译法，表达方式虽不同，语意则一样。)

Children brought up in rich families

出息。

may not be promising.

4. 事情未必就是如此。

It's not necessarily so.

未免 wèimiǎn

a bit too

1. 他这人未免太霸道了吧?

He is a bit too aggressive, isn't he?

2. 你这样未免太过份了吧?

Don't you think you've gone too far?

3. 这书对低年级生未免太深, 对高年级生又未免太浅。

The book is somewhat too difficult for the juniors and too easy for the seniors.

为此 wèicǐ

for the purpose

1. 现在事情已经弄到不可收拾的地步, 为此你必须负起责任。

Now that the situation has got out of hand, you must be responsible for it.

2. 他希望上港大, 为此, 他正非常用功, 准备考试。

He hopes he'll be admitted to Hong Kong University and to this end is working hard for the entrance examination.

3. 他不守信用, 为此, 朋友们决定再也不管他的事了。

He didn't keep his word, and on this account, his friends decided to wash their hands of his affairs.

4. 他儿子经常酗酒, 为此, 他减少了他每月的津贴。

His son often indulged himself in drinking. For this reason he cut down his monthly allowance.

5. 操场因雨较湿, 为此, 运动会延至下周。

The playground was soaked with rain, and because of this, the sports meet was put off till the following week.

无不 wúbù

1. 凡是看过这小说的人,无不为主人公的悲惨命运所感动。
2. 在场的人听了他的笑话,无不为之绝倒。
3. 那男孩长得那么英俊,难怪女孩子们无不为之倾倒。
4. 教师对头一天没来上学的学生无不问明原因。
5. 全校师生无不到大门口迎接那位世界冠军。
6. 对着这样一个悲怆的场面,观者无不动心。

all without exception

Anybody who has read this novel will surely be moved by the bitter fate of the hero.

People present *all* split their sides with laughter at his joke.

The lad is so handsome; no wonder the girls are overwhelmed with admiration for him.

The teacher required an excuse from every pupil, *without exception*, who had been absent the previous day.

The *whole* school, teachers and students, went to the school gate to welcome the world champion.

At such a pathetic spectacle, there *is not* a viewer *but* is deeply touched.

(not ... but 中的 but 是 pronoun, 相当于 “who not” 或 “that not”, 是一个 double negative. 把 not 换成 few 意思相同: There were few of them but came to the discussion. —他们中间很少不来参加讨论的。)

无从 wúcóng

1. 这块玉的确切年代已无从查考。
2. 已经散失的资料,现在无从寻找了。
3. 我这段奇遇简直是

no way

The exact period of this piece of jade *can hardly* be ascertained (or, ... can *no way* be ascertained).

The missing material is *nowhere* to be found.

As to my adventure, I just *do not*

- 无从说起。 *know where to begin.*
- 无妨 wúfāng 见“不妨” bùfāng p. 16
- 无非 wúfēi nothing but
1. 他这样说无非是为
了讨好她。 He said that *simply* to please her.
 2. 别生我的气, 我说
这个无非是想开个
玩笑。 Don't get angry with me. I said it
merely as a joke.
 3. 我不会相信他的,
我很明白, 他这人
无非是个骗子罢了。 I won't pin my faith on him. I know
very well he is *no more than* (or, *little
more than, nothing but*) a quack.
 4. 我现在还提不出什
么证据, 我所说的
无非是个推测。 I can't produce any evidence yet.
What I said is *only* a (or, ... is *pure*)
conjecture.
- 无怪乎 wúguàihu 见“怪不得” guàibude p. 56
- 无论 wúlùn 见“不论” bùlùn p. 20
- 无论如何 wúlùnrúhé 见“好歹” hǎodǎi p. 62
- 显然 xiǎnrán obviously
1. 很显然, 他开头没
听见警报, 可是等
他听见时, 已经太
晚了。 *It was quite obvious that he didn't hear
the warning until it was too late.*
 2. 他们显然是哥俩。 *It was evident that they are brothers.*
 3. 你的话显然是站不
住脚的。 What you have said *clearly* does not
hold water.

相当 xiāngdāng

I 表示“十分”，“非常” — quite, considerably

1. 这衣料相当不错。
2. 他待她相当好。
3. 他这人相当不错。
4. 这家伙相当讨厌。
5. 他已经相当累了。
6. 他这人相当有天分。

The dress material is *fairly* good.He is *rather* kind to her.He is a *very* nice guy.That fellow is *quite* a nuisance.He was *somewhat* tired.He was a man of *considerable* talent.

II 表示“大致相同” — correspond to

My daughter is *about* your age.

1. 我女儿跟你年龄相当。
2. 他们两个智力相当。

The two are *well-matched* in intelligence.

(参阅“相等” xiāngděng.)

相等 xiāngděng

be equal

1. 这两个班的学生人数相等。
2. 这两个人的才华相等。
3. 他们的能力大致相等。

The students of the two classes are *equal in number* (or, *equal in amount*).The two *match* each other *well in* talent.Their capabilities are *roughly the same*.

相对(地) xiāngduì(de)

I 表示“比较地” — comparatively

1. 相对地说，他今年的进步就更大了。
2. 从年龄看，他相对地比你聪明。
3. 去年我们在中东获得一个相对的和平局面。
4. 他两个儿子在学校

Comparatively speaking, he has made *greater* progress this year.He is *cleverer* than you are *in proportion to* your respective years.Last year we secured a *relative* stability of peace in the Middle East.

Both his sons are doing well in school,

的成绩都不错，相对地，小儿子似乎更好一些。

but the younger one seems to be a bit better.

II 表示“面对面”— face to face

1. 他们相对而坐，一边喝茶，一边谈论这件事情。

They sat *face to face* (or, *sat opposite each other*), and talked about the matter over cups of tea.

2. 两个旅馆隔街相对。

The two hotels are *on opposite sides* of the street.

相反 xiāngfǎn

opposite

1. 你的话似乎有些道理，不过我的意见正好跟你的相反。

What you have said is plausible; however my opinion is *opposite* (or, *contrary*) to yours.

2. 我向南走，他走的却是相反的路。

I went south, but he went *the other way*.

3. 他说谁也不愿参加那舞会，可事实上正相反。

He said no one wanted to go to the ball, but *the contrary* was true.

相仿 xiāngfǎng

similar

1. 这两个男孩身高相仿。

The two boys are *about the same* height.

2. 他们的性格颇多相仿之处。

There are *similarities* in their characters.

3. 摹本与原件相仿。

The copy *approximates* the original.

4. 两个女孩的音乐天分相仿。

The musical talent of the two girls is *roughly the same*.

相继 xiāngjì

in succession

1. 问题相继出现，使

Problems have cropped up *one follow-*

他们非常狼狈。

ing the other and have put them in an awkward position.

3. 三姐妹不约而同地相继而来。

The three sisters came *one after another* as if by prior agreement.

3. 代表们在大会上相继发言。

The delegates spoke *in turn* (or, *in succession*) at the assembly.

4. 好消息相继而来。

Glad tidings came *on top of each other*.

相近 xiāngjìn

close; alike

1. 他们的趣味相近。

They have *similar* tastes.

2. 兄弟俩的模样很相近。

a) The two brothers look *alike*.

b) The two brothers *resemble* each other in appearance.

c) The two brothers are *similar* in appearance.

3. 我的意见和他的很相近。

My opinion is *almost identical* with his.

4. 这是一场比分相近的比赛。

It was a *close* game.

相似 xiāngsì

resemble

1. 这双胞胎长的样子非常相似。

a) The twins are (or, look) much *alike*.

b) The twins *resemble* each other closely.

c) The twins are *very similar* in appearance.

2. 两个论点十分相似。

a) The two arguments sounded *more or less the same*.

b) There was a strong *resemblance* between the two arguments.

- 相像 xiāngxiàng 见“相似” xiāngsì p. 149
- 详尽(地) xiángjìn(de) detailed
- 关于这一点我们以后还要更加详尽地讨论。
We'll discuss this point *at more length* later on.
 - 限于时间,我无法详尽论述这场战争的背景了。
As time is limited, I cannot go into the background of this war.
 - 这是一件极不愉快的事情,所以只好请你们原谅,我就不详尽地谈其中的情节了。
It is an extremely unpleasant affair, and you must excuse me from going into details.
 - 他昨天做的报告非常详尽。
The report he made yesterday was very extensive.
 - 她十分详尽地描述了她的假期生活。
a) She described her life in the vacation in minute detail.
b) She gave a minute (or, thorough) description of her life in the vacation.
- 详细 xiángxì 见“详尽” xiángjìn p. 150
- 想不到 xiǎngbùdào 见“不料” bùliào p. 20
- 向来 xiànglái 见“从来” cónglái p. 28
- 些微 xiēwēi 见“稍微” shāowēi p. 125
- 些许 xiēxǔ 见“稍微” shāowēi p. 125

幸好 xìnghǎo

见“好在” hǎozài p. 64

幸亏 xìngkuī

fortunately

1. 幸亏我们在路上找到一辆的士，否则就晚了。
We were *lucky (or, fortunate) enough* to find a taxi on the way (or, Luckily we found a taxi on the way); otherwise we would have been late.
2. 幸亏我带着伞，没让雨淋着。
As luck would have it, I took my umbrella along and didn't get wet in the rain.
3. 幸亏他出了个好主意，我们才渡过了难关。
Thanks to his bright idea, we tided over the difficulty.
4. 幸亏有你们的帮助，不然我们就失败了。
a) *But for your help, we should have failed.*
b) *If it hadn't been for your help, we should have failed.*

许多 xǔduō

many; a great deal

1. 在那些候选人当中，许多都是他的朋友。
Many of those candidates are his friends.
2. 许多人都曾为自由献出了自己的生命。
Many a man has sacrificed his life for freedom.
(many a 是书面语，后接单数名词。)
3. 我今天有许多事情要做。
I have a good many (or, a great many) things to do today.
4. 桌布上洒了许多酒。
A great deal of wine has been spilt on the tablecloth.
(a great deal of 后接不可数名词，不用复数。)

5. 我发现他书架上摆着许多侦探小说。
I found a large number of detective stories on his shelf.
6. 她常常买许多的蔬菜。
She often buys vegetables in quantity (or, in large quantities).
7. 她有许多男朋友。
She has a lot of (or, lots of) boy friends.
(a lot of 或 lots of 后面可接可数或不可数名词, 如: 这可省了我许多麻烦。— That'll save me a lot of trouble.)
8. 她这次环球旅行花了许多钱。
She spent a large amount of (or, a considerable amount of) money in making a round-the-world tour.
9. 你的话有许多是很有道理的
Much of what you say is true.
10. 他们为这次旅行准备了许多钱。
They had plenty of money for the trip. (plenty of 只用在肯定句。)
11. 他那篇作文出了许多错误。
He made a series of blunders in his composition.

迅速 xùnsù

- rapidly; swiftly
1. 这城市发展之迅速使我们感到十分惊讶。
The rapid growth of the city surprised us very much.
2. 他是一个能够迅速采取行动以应付紧急情况的人。
He is a man who can be swift to act in case of emergency.
3. 她由于反应迅速, 所以在车祸中只受了点轻伤。
She was only slightly wounded in the car accident because of her prompt reaction.
4. 他以善于作出迅速决定而见知于人。
He was known for having the gift of making quick decisions.

要不(然) yàobù(rán) 见“不然” bùrán p. 21

要不是 yàobùshi

1. 要不是那么忙, 她可能就来了。

if it were not for

a) She would have come *if* she hadn't been so busy.

b) She would have come, *but* she was so busy.

2. 要不是你们及时帮忙, 我们的处境可能就很不妙了。

a) We might have got into hot water *if it hadn't been for* your timely help.

b) We might have got into a tight corner *without* your timely help.

c) *But for* your timely help, we might have been in an awkward dilemma.

3. 要不是个书呆子, 谁会这样说话呢?

Who but a pedant would talk that way?

要么……要么…… yàome ... yàome ...

either ... or ...

1. 对这种事情, 要么别干, 要么全力以赴, 可千万别拖拖拉拉。

Either drop the matter or deal with it with all your might, but you must on no account put it off.

2. 你要么上大学, 要么去工厂干活, 可不能成天鬼混。

You have the alternative of going to university or working in the factory, but you shouldn't fool round all the time.

要是 yàoshi

参阅“如果” rúguǒ

1. 要是我忘了, 请提醒我一下。

Please remind me *in case* I forget.

2. 你要是不怪我说话

If you'll excuse me for speaking too

太直，我觉得他这人有点势利眼。

bluntly, I should say there is something snobbish in him.

3. 你要是不能如期看完这本书，你可以到图书馆来续借两个星期。

Supposing you can't finish the book in due time, you can come to the library and renew it for two more weeks.

4. 你当初要是能细心一些就好了。

I wish you *were* more careful.

5. 我要是处在你的地位，我也会这样做的。

Were I in your position, I would do it that way.

6. 你要是把钱拿去赌，那还不如把它仍掉好。

You *might as well* throw your money away *as* spend it in gambling.

(*may as well ... as* 本意是“做甲事同做乙事是一样的”，在本句里，实际上是表达“还不如”，但已足以把“要是”托出。)

7. 他要是来不来，怎么办？

What if he doesn't come?

也罢……也罢 yěbà ... yěbà whether ... or ...

1. 成功也罢，失败也罢，我都要试一试。

I'll try *whether* I succeed *or* fail.

2. 喜欢也罢，不喜欢也罢，反正你得干这活儿。

You have got to do the job, like it *or not*.

3. 养子也罢，亲生儿子也罢，他都一样从严要求。

He set strict demands on *both* his adopted son *and* his own son.

4. 下雨也罢，不下雨也罢，对我们来说都一样。

Rain or no rain, it was all the same to us.

也好……也好 yěhǎo ... yěhǎo

见“也罢……也罢” yěbà ... yěbà p. 154.

也许 yěxǔ

见“或许” huòxǔ p. 71

一般 yībān

generally

1. 我一般是八点出门上班。

I usually leave for work at eight.

2. 一般地说，我们对她的工作很满意。

Generally speaking, we are satisfied with her work.

3. 这路程一般得走两天。

It's a two-day journey, more or less.

4. 在许多情况下，沉默一般总是最精明的做法。

In many cases, silence is the best policy, as a rule.

一半 yībàn

参阅“对半” duìbàn 条 p. 37 或

“一方面……一方面” yī fāngmiàn ... yī fāngmiàn p. 159

一边……一边…… yībiān ... yībiān ...

at the same time as

1. 他一边吃早饭，一边听新闻广播。

He listened to the news programme while he ate his breakfast.

2. 她带着作文来找我，我一边读一边加以润色。

She came to me with her composition. I made some improvements as I went over it.

3. 我们一边吃午饭，一边讨论那计划。

We discussed the plan over our lunch.

4. 他们一边喝酒，一边聊天。

They chatted over wine cups.

5. 她一边读，一边吃
吃地笑个不停。
She *kept chuckling* to herself *over* (or, *at*) what she was reading.
6. 他一边这么说着，
一边就走了。
a) With this he went away.
b) So saying, he went away.

一旦 yīdàn

1. 一旦掌握了基本技巧，
你就不会觉得游泳难学了。
once
You won't find swimming difficult, *once* you've mastered the basic skills.
2. 他这人一旦得势，
连老朋友都不认的。
He is a man who will desert his old friends *as soon as* he is in the ascendant.
3. 一旦出现紧急情况，
你应立即报警。
Report to the police at once *in case of* emergency.

一点儿 yīdiǎnr

- a bit
I. 用于肯定句:
1. 别着急，我们还有
一点儿时间。
Don't worry, we still have *a little* time.
2. 他这人有一点点爱拍。
He is *a bit of* a soft-soaper.
3. 她这人有一点点势利眼。
a) There is *something of* a snob about her.
b) There is *something* snobbish about her.
4. 请收下这小小的生日礼物，
这不过是我对你表示的一点点
爱念罢了。
Please accept this *little* birthday present. It's nothing but *a small token of* my affection for you.
5. 她为了减肥，每天
只吃一点点东西。
She is only eating *a morsel of* food all day to get slim.

6. 她今天似乎好一点儿了。
She looks *a shade* better today.
7. 这汤欠一点儿盐。
The soup needs *a trifle* more salt.
8. 他这人颇有一点点幽默。
There is quite *a streak* of humour in him.
9. 这新鞋有一点点夹脚。
The new shoes pinch *slightly*.
10. 她的脸颊有一点点斑纹。
Her cheeks were *faintly* mottled.
- II. 用于否定句:
1. 他对衣着一点也不讲究。
He doesn't care *a whit* about his clothes.
2. 她爱我不爱, 我一点儿也不在乎。
I *don't care a damn* (*a fig*) whether she loves me or not.
3. 她一点儿也不晓得这件事情。
a) She has *not the faintest* (or, *not the least*) idea of the matter.
b) She is in *total ignorance* with regard to the matter.
4. 她一经改过自新, 便一点儿也不留恋过去的生活了。
Having turned over *a new leaf*, she didn't yearn for the past *in the least*.
5. 我昨天晚上一点儿也没合眼, 可今天一点儿也不觉得乏。
I didn't sleep *a wink* last night, and yet I don't feel *the least bit* tired today.
6. 我对这个问题一点儿兴趣也没有。
I don't have *a speck* of interest in the subject.
7. 不利于他的证据一点儿也没有。
There is not *a shred* of evidence against him.
8. 我一点儿也不怪他。
a) I don't blame him *at all*.
b) *Far be it from* me to blame him.
9. 我对你的工作一点
Your work is *far from* satisfactory.

儿都不满意。

10. 他一点儿也不对。 He was *completely* wrong.
11. 这事情我一点儿也
想不起来了。 I've forgotten *the whole thing*.
12. 跟他谈这事情一点
儿好处也没有。 It *won't be any good* talking to him
about the matter.
13. 他们一点儿吃的东
西都没有了。 They *hadn't anything* to eat.
14. 我一点儿也不喜欢
这幅画。 a) The painting has *no appeal whatever*
for me (or, *no appeal for me whatsoever*).
b) The painting *doesn't appeal to me*
at all.
15. 她这话说的一点儿
道理也没有。 What she said is *utterly unjustifiable*.
16. 有关贿赂的调查一
点儿结果也没有。 The investigation of the bribery *ended*
up in smoke (or, *came to nothing*).
17. 对于不合理的要
求, 我们一点儿也
不让步。 We will yield *nothing* to unreasonable
demands.
18. 别人对他有什么看
法, 他一点儿也不
在乎。 He *didn't give a damn* what people
thought about him.
19. 我一点也想像不出
他说了些什么。 I don't have *the remotest* idea of what
he said.
20. 她对此事一点儿也
不知道。 She *doesn't know the first thing* about
it.

一定 yīdìng

1. 明天一定来玩啊! *Be sure* to come tomorrow!
2. 你要是顺着这道往 *You are certain* (or, *sure*) to reach town

- 前走，一定能走到城里。
 3. 他这会儿一定到了。
 4. 这本书是一定要读的。
 5. 像她这样头脑简单的女孩子，那是一定要上当的。
 6. 一个野心勃勃的人最后是一定要失望的。
 7. 生活费用增加了，是不是工资就一定会增加呢？
 8. 学生一定要听老师的话。
 9. 我们一定如期把工作完成。
- if you follow this road.
 He *must* have got there by now.
 The book is *an absolute must*.
 A girl as simple-minded as she is *bound to* be taken in.
 A man whose ambition knows no bounds is *doomed to disappointment*.
 Do rising costs *necessarily* mean that higher wages will follow?
 Pupils *ought to* obey their teachers.
 We *are determined to* get the work done in time.

一度 yīdù

1. 我曾一度在这所学校上学。
 2. 他一度在这所学校教过书。
 3. 七十年代末，他一度出洋考察电子工业。
- once
 I *once* attended this school.
 He is a *former* teacher of this school.
 For *a time* he made a study of the electronics industry abroad during the late seventies.

一方面……，(另)一方面 yī fāngmiàn ..., (lìng) yī fāngmiàn
 on the one hand, ... on the other

- hand ...
1. 女孩子很少有喜欢汤姆的, 这一方面是由于他懒, 另一方面是由于他自私。
Few girls would take to Tom. It was partly due to his laziness, and partly due to his selfishness.
2. 我们一方面作好飞行准备, 另一方面不断跟气象站进行联系。
On the one hand we made preparation for the flying; on the other hand, we kept in touch with the weather station.
3. 我不能跟你们去日本了, 因为我一方面没有钱, 另一方面也没有时间。
I can't go to Japan with you. For one thing, I can't afford it, for another, I have no time.
4. 一方面因为累, 一方面则因为饿, 我感到寸步难行。
What with fatigue, and what with hunger, I could not walk any further.
- (1. "what ... and what ..." 这一个介词短语句型, 在句中起表原因的状语作用, 表示 "partly ... partly ..." 这一层意思; 2. what 后多跟 with 搭配, 但也可跟其它介词, 如: by, for, through 连用; 3. 这一句型的后半 what with (by, for ...) 也可省去, 见下两例。)
5. 一方面利用贿赂, 一方面利用敲诈, 他弄到了一大笔钱。
What by bribe, and what by extortions, he made enormous sums of money.
6. 他一方面因工作过度, 一方面又因营养不良, 所以很快就病倒了。
What with overwork and undernourishment he soon fell ill.
7. 我们一方面承认你的话很有道理, 一方面我们也坚持我
- We admit, there is much point in what you say; at the same time, we adhere to our own opinion.

们的看法。

一概 yīgài

1. 被告对指控他的罪行一概否认。
2. 他们对他的要求一概予以拒绝。
3. 他一口咬定他对此事一概不知。

totally; without exception

The accused made a denial of *all* the charges.

They refused *every* request of his.

He insisted that he knew *nothing* about the affair.

一共 yīgòng

1. 中国的面积一共有 9,600,000 平方公里。
2. 耶稣一共有十二门徒。
3. 去年中国的钢产量一共达三千万吨。
4. 他前后一共当了三年系主任。
5. 这些东西一共多少钱?
6. 伊丽莎白·泰莱一共结过八次婚。
7. 他全年的工资一共是三万美元。
8. 不算小孩, 我们一共有二十人。

altogether

The area of China *all told* is 9,600,000 square kilometres.

Jesus had twelve apostles *in all*.

Output of steel in China last year *amounted to* thirty million tons.

He was head of the department *one time with another* for three years.

How much is that *altogether*?

Elizabeth Taylor has been married eight times.

The *total* of his wages for a whole year is thirty thousand dollars.

There are twenty of us, not counting the children.

一会儿 yīhuìr

1. 过一会儿我就给你

a little while; in a moment

a) I'll ring you up *in a little while*.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 打电话。 | b) I'll call up <i>before long</i> . |
| 2. 午饭一会儿就能开。 | Lunch will be ready <i>in a moment</i> . |
| 3. 请等一会儿。 | <i>Just a minute, please.</i> |
| 4. 咱们得赶快走, 过
一会儿火车就要开
了。 | We must hurry because our train is
leaving <i>soon</i> . |

—……就…… yī ... jiù ...

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| | as soon as |
| 1. 他一到日本就给女
朋友写信了。 | a) <i>As soon as</i> he arrived in Japan, he
wrote to his girl friend.
b) <i>On arriving</i> in Japan, he wrote to
his girl friend.
c) He had <i>scarcely</i> (or, <i>hardly</i>) arrived
in Japan <i>when</i> he wrote to his girl
friend.
d) <i>Hardly</i> (or, <i>Scarcely</i>) had he arrived
in Japan <i>when</i> he wrote to his girl
friend.
e) <i>No sooner had</i> he arrived in Japan
<i>than</i> he wrote to his girl friend. |
| 2. 我一看见她就知道
她惹麻烦了。 | <i>The moment</i> (or, <i>The instant</i>) I saw
her, I knew she was in trouble. |
| 3. 他一见她就爱上她
了。 | He loved her <i>at first sight</i> . |
| 4. 她一眼就看穿他的
诡计。 | She saw through his tricks <i>at the first
glance</i> . |
| 5. 他一来就请告诉我。 | Please let me know <i>directly</i> he comes. |
| 6. 你一听这个歌就永
远忘不了。 | <i>Once</i> you have heard the song, you
will never forget it. |

- 一口气 yīkǒuqì 见“接连” jiēlián p. 84
- 一连 yīlián 见“接连” jiēlián p. 84
- 一律 yīlǜ without exception; alike
1. 委员会的委员一律赞成这决定。 Members of the committee were, *one and all*, in favour of the decision.
 2. 不论我们提出什么要求, 他一律答应下来。 No matter what demands we made, he promised to meet them all *without exception*.
 3. 在法律面前, 人人一律平等。 All men are *equal* before law.
- 一面……一面 yīmiàn ... yīmiàn 见“一方面……, (另)一方面” yī fāngmiàn... , (lìng) yī fāngmiàn p. 159
- 一身 yīshēn all over the body
1. 他一身都淋湿了。 He is wet *all over*.
 2. 他一身是汗, 因为已经忙了好几个小时了。 He was *all in a sweat*, because he had been on the go for several hours.
 3. 她做了一场恶梦, 醒后出了一身冷汗。 She woke up from a nightmare and *found herself wet with cold sweat*.
 4. 他的汽车撞在树上, 人们发现他一身都是血。 His car crashed into a tree; people found him *covered with blood*.
 5. 三国名将赵子龙一身是胆。 Zhao Zi Long, a famous general at the period of the Three Kingdoms, was *every inch a hero* (or, *was all courageousness; or, was courage itself*).

6. 她今天穿得一身红。 She was dressed *all in red* today.

一时……一时 yīshí ... yīshí

见“忽而……忽而” hū'ér ... hū'ér p. 69

一条龙似的 yītiáolóngside in tandem

1. 我们要了一个竹筏，一条龙似的坐好，顺流而下，欣赏两岸的山景。 We took a bamboo raft, on which we sat *tandem*, and went downstream, enjoying the mountain scenery of both banks.
2. 小学生一条龙似的排成单行，走出校门。 The pupil went out of the school gate *in single file* (or, *one after the other in a line*).

一下 yīxià

in a short time

1. 你让我考虑一下好吗? Will you let me *think it over*?
2. 决定之前，你应该好好考虑一下。 You should *give the matter a lot of thought* before you decide what to do. (give the matter a lot of thought 实际上译的是“好好考虑一下”。)
3. 请等一下。 *Wait a minute*, please.
4. 请你解释一下这是什么意思。 Please explain to me what this means.
5. 听到那好消息，他的病一下就好了。 Having heard the good news, he recovered from the illness *at once*.
6. 天气一下就变了。 The weather changed *all of a sudden*.

一样 yīyàng

the same

1. 她还是跟从前一样漂亮。 She is *as pretty as ever*.

2. 他跟别人一样努力。 He worked *as hard as* other people.
3. 他这人的就跟行尸走肉一样。 He is *as good as* dead already.
4. 那小女孩就跟一朵花一样。 *It is with* that little girl *as with* a flower.
5. 人生就跟旅途一样。 a) Life is like a journey.
b) *It is in* life *as in* a journey.
6. 他觉得那三天就好像是三年一样。 a) Those three days seemed to him as three years.
b) Those three days amounted to three years to him.
7. 我的表跟你的完全一样。 My watch is *exactly the same as* yours.
8. 她说汉语和日语一样地流利。 She speaks Chinese and Japanese with *equal* fluency.

一一 yīyī

- one by one
1. 警方对可疑人物一一加以盘问。 The police questioned the suspicious persons *one by one*.
(One by one 侧重“一个一个来”。)
2. 学生一一走出教室。 *One after another* the students left the classroom.
(one after another 侧重“一个跟着一个地”。)
3. 临走, 她跟大家一一告别。 Before she left, she said good-bye to *everyone*.
(everyone 侧重“每一个”。)
4. 他把文章的论点一一加以阐明。 He gave *full details of* the arguments in his article.
5. 现在我要就下列各点一一予以说明。 Now I'm going to illustrate the following points *in their given order*.
(in given order 侧重“顺着次序一个个来”。)

6. 主人给客人一一添酒。

The host refilled the guests' wine glasses *in turn*.

(in turn 侧重“一个个轮着来”。)

7. 主人向客人一一表示欢迎。

The host extended a welcome to all *and sundry*.

(all and sundry 侧重“每一个” — everybody.)

一再 yīzài

见“频频” pín pín p. 114

一直 yīzhí

continuously; all along

1. 我们在乡下的时候一直下雨。

It rained *all the while* when we were in the countryside.

2. 大雨一直下了好几天。

The rain poured *for* several days.

3. 她朝窗外一直看了两个小时。

She looked out of the window for two hours *on end*.

(on end 等于 continuously)

4. 从童年起，我们一直就在一起。

We have been together *ever since* childhood.

5. 她从去年底就开始吸毒，她哥哥一直都知道这个情况。

She began taking drugs at the end of last year and her brother has known it *all along*.

(all along 等于 all the time)

6. 他们陪着我一直走到大门口，然后彼此道别。

They went *all the way* with me to the gate, then we said goodbye.

7. 这条路一直通到河边。

a) The road ended at the river.

b) The road led to the riverside.

8. 他把母亲十年前写给他的信一直珍藏

He has treasured the letter his mother wrote him ten years ago *to this day*.

到今天。

他活到九十岁，一直到死时记忆还非常好。

He lived to be ninety years old, possessing *to the last* (or, *till the last*) a strong memory.

(to the last = until the end)

10. 看样子，他一直就知道这件事情。

It seemed he knew the thing *from the start*.

依旧 yījiù

见“依然” yīrán p. 167

依然 yīrán

still; as before

1. 到了四十岁，她依然很美。

At the age of forty she was *still* very attractive.

2. 她那样子依然跟从前一样漂亮。

She looks *as pretty as ever*.

3. 十年后我又碰见了 他，发现他依然是 从前那个老样子。

I met him again ten years later, and found that he was *still his same old self*.

4. 支票依然有效。

The cheque *remains* valid.

5. 三十年后我旧地重游，竟发现这小镇依然如昨。

When I revisited the small town thirty years later, I was so surprised to find it *remaining the same*.

6. 他虽然老了，但依然生气勃勃。

For all his years, he is *none the less* vigorous.

以……(为) yǐ ... (wéi)

1. 本画报以内容丰富，印制精美见称。

The Pictorial is noted for its substantial content and beautiful design.

2. 本画报以介绍香港各地名胜古迹，文化艺术为旨趣。

The main theme of the Pictorial is to introduce to the public places of historic interest and scenic beauty, cul-

3. 本画报以提供旅游资料为服务职责。
4. 本画报以推广旅游业务为目的, 作为多家著名旅游公司之代理。

ture and arts in Hong Kong.

The Pictorial serves to provide information on travel.

With a view to promoting tourism, the Pictorial acts as agent of various noted travel agencies.

以便 yǐbiàn

1. 他们在礼堂安上扩音器, 以便每个人都听得见。
2. 希望你能早点来, 以便研究计划的细节。
3. 警方将与有关人保持联系, 以便对此事作进一步的调查。
4. 他不愿意跟他兄弟吵架, 以便维持手足之情。
5. 他们接连拍了三个电报, 以便工厂马上把货物装运。
6. 他对她暗示, 她的男朋友跟女秘书有那么一手, 以便她不要上当。

so that; in order to

They set up loudspeakers in the hall *in order that* everyone would be able to hear.

I hope you will come early *so that* we can go into details of the plan.

The police will keep in touch with the persons concerned *so as to* make further investigations.

He refused to quarrel with his brother *with an aim to* maintaining an affectionate brotherhood.

They dispatched three cables in succession *to the effect that* the factory might ship the goods immediately.

He hinted that her boy-friend was having an affair with his secretary *for the purpose of* not letting her be taken in.

以后 yǐhòu

later on; hereafter

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. 这是他两年前的信，以后他就没再写了。 | This is the letter which came two years ago; he hasn't written again <i>since then</i> . |
| 2. 我以后再给你去电话。 | I shall call up again <i>later on</i> . |
| 3. 他从认识她那天起爱上了她，而且三个月以后就跟她结婚了。 | He fell in love with her the first day they met and married her three months <i>later</i> . |
| 4. 他们认识以后经常见面。 | They have often seen each other <i>since</i> they became acquainted. |
| 5. 我一周以后再回来。 | I'll come again <i>in a week</i> . |
| 6. 他们是在六十年代初期来香港的，从那以后，就一直住在这里了。 | They came to Hong Kong in the early sixties, and have lived here <i>from then on</i> (or, <i>ever since</i> ; or <i>since then</i>). |
| 7. 按装了新设备以后，这个月的生产比上个月增加百分之二十。 | Production this month has increased by 20% as compared with last month <i>subsequent to</i> the installation of new equipment. |

以内 yǐnèi

within

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. 此书必须在一周内归还。 | The book should be returned <i>in a week</i> . |
| 2. 他的汽车为警方的摩托车所尾随，而且一直在视线以内。 | His car was shadowed by a police motorcycle and kept <i>within</i> sight all along. |
| 3. 我有把握，两个钟头以内就能做完。 | I'm sure it can be done in <i>less than</i> two hours. |

以前 yǐqián

1. 我以前没见过她。
2. 他以前当过教员。
3. 他还是跟以前一样慷慨。
4. 这本书无疑是他的杰作，超过了他以前的所有著作。
5. 这是多年以前发生的事了。
6. 他结婚以前住在国外。
7. 我还是一个月以前的想法。
8. 乔治是她以前的丈夫。
9. 玛利是我以前的同事。
10. 艾丽丝是他以前的同班同学。

before; formerly

I haven't seen her *before*.a) He *used to* be a teacher.b) He was *once* a teacher.He is generous *as of old* (or, *as ever*).This book is no doubt his masterpiece, surpassing all his *previous* works.It happened many year *since*.

(since 在此是 adverb, 作 ago 解。)

He lived abroad *prior to* his marriage.I am still of the same mind as I was a month *ago*.George is her *ex*-husband.Mary is a *former* colleague of mine.Alice is an *old* classmate of his.

以上 yǐshàng

1. 本幼儿园秋季招收三岁以上儿童五十名。
2. 身高一米以上的儿童凭票入场。
3. 上周末有十对以上的人来参加我们的

I. 表示“大于、高于”— more than; over
Fifty children of three *and over* are to be admitted to the kindergarten *this fall*.Admission by tickets only for children of 100 centimetres *or above* in height.*More than* (or, *over*) ten couples came to our home party last weekend.

家庭舞会。

4. 香港人称东方之珠，人口在五百万以上。
5. 佳木斯地处北纬四十六度以上，冬季雪景一片银白，令人叹绝。

6. 以上问题仍有待解决。

Hong Kong is praised as the Pearl of the Orient with a population *in excess of* five million.

As Jiamusi is *way up* the 46th Parallel, the city presents fabulous silvery snow scenes.

II. 表示“前述” — the above-mentioned
The *above-mentioned* (or, *above-said*) problems remain to be settled.

以外 yìwài

1. 除这一本以外，你要借哪本书都可以。
2. 除了这两个女孩以外，当时还有谁跟你在一起？
3. 除此以外，我还有一个问题要问你。
4. 除此以外，我恐怕没法子帮你的忙了。
5. 除字典以外，一共有一百多本书。
6. 除英语以外，他还能说法语。

besides; except

You can borrow any book *except* this one.

Besides the two girls, who else was with you?

Now just *one more* question I would like to have you answer.

I don't think I can help you in any *other way than* this.

There are more than one hundred copies of books, *not including* dictionaries.

He can speak French, *in addition to* English.

以往 yǐwǎng

见“以前” yǐqián p. 170

以下 yǐxià

1. 五岁以下儿童谢绝入场。
2. 今天很冷，气温在零度以下。
3. 经理及其以下的职员全部都参加企业创立五十周年庆祝。
4. 文章应缩减至五百字以下。

1. 在利用外国资金过程中，应坚持以下原则和做法。
2. 以下为例句：

因此 yīncǐ

1. 我的汽车半路抛了锚，因此我上班晚了。
2. 母亲病倒了，因此孩子们便由姑妈照顾。
3. 他饿极了，因此把

I. 表示“小于”、“次于”

— below; under

Children *under* five not admitted.It's ice-cold today. The temperature is *below* zero (or, is *sub-zero*).The whole staff, *from* the manager *down*, took part in the celebration of the 50th anniversary of the establishment.The article should be boiled down to *less than* 500 words.

II. 表示“下列” — the following

In using foreign funds, the *following* principles and practices should be strictly observed.a) Example sentences are given as *follows*:b) The *following* are example sentences.

therefore

My car broke down on the way, *so* I was late for work.a) The mother took to her bed, *therefore* the children were taken care of by their aunt.b) The children were taken care of by their aunt, *because* their mother took to her bed.He was *so* hungry *that* he wolfed down

- 桌子上的东西全部吃光。 all the food on the table.
4. 他去年夏天正赶写一本书。因此，他没有跟家人一起上海滨去避暑。 He was busy writing a book last summer, and *for that reason* (or, *purpose*) didn't go to the seaside resort with his family.
5. 昨天晚上雨很大，因此那铺子上门了。 It rained hard yesterday, and *on that account*, the store was shut.
- 因而** yīn'ér thus; as a result
1. 打字员生病，因而必须找人替她。 The typist fell ill, *thus* making it necessary for us to find a substitute for her.
2. 该轮船救生衣物完备，因而一旦遇险，乘客可保无虞。 The steamer was fully provided with life-preservers, *to the end that* the passengers might be saved in case of accident.
(to the end that = in order that)
3. 他经常逃学，因而教师便去找他家长。 He often played truant, and *on account of this*, the teacher went to see his parents.
4. 他为了考香港大学曾努力准备，因而考取了。 He had worked hard for the entrance examination of Hong Kong University. *As a result*, he was admitted.
- 因为** yīnwèi because; for
1. 她一定要买那毛衣，因为她觉得穿上它很漂亮。 She insisted on buying the sweater *because* she thought she would look very pretty in it.
2. 那小学生因为逃学受到了处罚。 The pupil was punished *for* playing truant.

3. 我们决不能松劲。
因为现在每一分钟
都很重要。
We mustn't relax, *since* every minute
now counts.
4. 她因为生病, 所以
没去跳舞。
As she was ill, she didn't go to the
ball.
5. 因为考虑到他的年
纪, 所以原谅了他。
He was excused *by reason of* his age.
6. 因为台风, 长洲之
游顺延至下礼拜
日。
The trip to Cheung Chau Island is put
off till next Sunday *on account of* the
typhoon.
7. 因为天气突变, 他
们决定不去游泳
了。
They decided *against* going swimming
owing to the sudden change of weath-
er.
8. 这些错误完全是因
为粗心大意造成的。
There are errors *due to* sheer careles-
ness.
9. 我们决不能因为这
样一个小小的挫折
就灰心丧气。
We must not get discouraged *because*
of such a minor setback.
10. 因为生病, 他没去
成。
Illness prevented him from going
there.
11. 因为生病, 他不得
不中断了试验。
He was compelled *by* illness to suspend
his experiment.
12. 我之所以想写这样
一本书, 是因为我
和一个舞女谈话引
起的。
The idea of writing such a book *ori-*
ginated from a conversation I had with
a dancing-girl.
13. 这次失败是因为一
些无法控制的情况
造成的。
The failure *arose from* circumstances
beyond our control.
14. 因为天气关系, 所
以耽误了。
The weather is responsible for the de-
lay.

15. 她很容易因为一些小事就激动起来。 She is apt to get excited over very small matters.
16. 这书之所以不能令人满意,是因为它缺少一个完善的索引。 The book is unsatisfactory in that it lacks a good index.
17. 她完全是因为妒忌才爱他的。 She loved him merely out of jealousy.
18. 他因为长期服役而获得十字奖章。 He was awarded a Cross in (or, by) virtue of his long military service.

(in 或 by virtue of 相当于 because of, 但又有所不同,前者往往指值得称颂的事,这显然跟 virtue 本身的原义 goodness 有关,后者则属于中性色彩,指值得称颂的事或不幸的事都可以,如 Because of illness, she could not go to the ball.)

尤其 yóuqí

见“特别” tèbié p. 135

由于 yóuyú

见“因为” yīnwèi p. 173

有关 yǒuguān

见“关于” guānyú p. 57

与其……不如…… yǔqí ... bùrú ...

1. 与其跟她出门,不如呆在家里。

a) I prefer to stay at home rather than go out with her.

b) I prefer staying at home to going out with her.

c) I would rather stay at home than go out with her.

d) Better I stay at home than go out with her.

2. 他这次成功与其说是由于才能, 不如说是因为勤奋。
His success was *not so much* by talent as by diligence.
3. 与其说他是个哲学家, 不如说他是个诗人更合适。
He is *more poet than* philosopher.
4. 与其说她漂亮, 不如说她迷人。
She is *more attractive than* pretty.
5. 与其借钱给他, 不如把钱扔到海里。
You *might as well* throw your money into the sea as lend it to him.

愈……愈…… yù...yù... 见“越……越” yuè...yuè p. 177

愈加 yùjiā 见“更加” gèngjiā p. 53

原来 yuánlái

original

1. 这公园原来不大。
The park was *originally* quite small.
2. 她还在原来那个学校教书。
She is still teaching at the *same* college.
3. 原来是这样!
So that's how it is!
4. 我原来在上海的时候常去看她。
I *used to* see her a lot when I was in Shanghai.
5. 真没想到你原来是这个意思。
I never thought you meant that.
6. 这幅画原来就是件赝品。
The painting was a forgery *in the first place*.
7. 原来是你呀!
Oh, it's you!
8. 我原来以为他不来, 可他还是来了。
I *thought* he would not come, but he did.
9. 我们将按照原来的计划进行实验。
We will carry out the experiment as *planned*.

10. 说实话，我原来不想来，可是经过考虑，我改变了主意。
To tell you the truth, I didn't want to come, but on second thought, I changed my mind and here I am.
11. 我原本以为这人很诚实，结果却是个彻头彻尾的伪君子。
I thought he was an honest man but he turned out to be an out-and-out hypocrite.

原先 yuánxiān

见“原来” yuánlái p. 176

约莫 yuēmo

见“大约” dàyuē p. 34

越……越…… yuè...yuè

the more ..., the more...

1. 月越圆，其光越亮。
a) *The more* nearly full the moon is, *the more* light it gives.
b) *The fuller* the moon is, *the brighter* it shines.
2. 探长越是深入调查，就越怀疑那女人是个同谋犯。
The more the inspector went into the investigation, *the more* he suspected that woman to be an accomplice.
3. 生活费用越来越来高。
Life is becoming *more and more* expensive.
4. 他觉得自己越来越受她的媚力所吸引。
He found it *more and more* difficult to resist her charm.
5. 你越用功，进步就越大。
The harder you work, *the greater* progress you will make.
6. 国王越来越富，他的人民却越来越穷。
While the king was *growing richer and richer*, his people were *becoming poorer and poorer*.
7. 你来得越早越好。
The sooner you can come, *the better*.

8. 人越多越热闹。 *The more the merrier.*
9. 时间越来越晚，他们都不耐烦了。 *They had all become impatient as it was getting late.*
10. 病人的情况越来越不好。 *The patient grew steadily worse.*
11. 你的咳嗽好像越来越厉害了。 *Your cough seems to be getting worse.*
12. 做事情越仔细越好。 *You cannot be too careful in your work.*
13. 孔夫子是个美食家，他认为米越白越好，肉末越细越好——所谓“食不厌精，脍不厌细”。 *Confucius was a gourmet. He held that rice could never be too white and mincemeat could never be chopped too fine.*
14. 朋友是越多越好。 *No man can have too many friends.*
15. 她越解释，我们越糊涂。 *Her explanation only added to our confusion.*
(add to 本作“增加”之意，与“only”连用，增强了语气，故含“越…越…”之意。)
16. 他想得到她的欲望越大，而要实现这欲望的可能性似乎越小。 *As his desire for her increases, its fulfilment seems to recede.*
(as 在此作“随着”解，故隐含“越…越…”之意，又如：He advanced in hypocrisy as he advanced in position. — 他地位越高，态度就越虚伪。)
17. 香港在八十年代将会越来越繁荣。 *Hong Kong will become increasingly prosperous in the eighties.*
18. 他虽然觉得自己越来越生气，但还是很好地控制住了自己。 *Though he felt his anger mounting, he kept perfect control of himself.*

19. 他越说越起劲。 He warmed up *as* he went on with his speech.

再加 zàijiā 见“外加” wàijiā p. 140

再三 zàisān 见“频频” pínpín p. 114

再……也没有了 zài ... yě méiyǒu liè

1. 他送给她的钻戒再精致也没有了。 He offered her the *most* exquisite diamond ring *imaginable*.

2. 这小说的故事再复杂也没有了。 The novel has the *most* intricate plot *imaginable*.

(形容词最高级后加 *imaginable* 作“可以想像得到”解,引伸成“再……也没有了”。)

3. 这再好也没有了! It *couldn't be better!*

暂时 zànshí temporary

1. 我们暂时住在这儿吧。 We'll stay here *for the time being*.

2. 我看他暂时来不了。 I don't think he can come *in a short time (or, at the moment)*.

3. 请大家暂时把工作停一下,我有几句话要说说。 Please stop work *for the moment*. I've a few words to say to you.

4. 关于这件事情,我们暂时不作决定。 As to this matter, let's not make a decision *yet*.

5. 这钱暂时够用了。 The money is enough *for the present*.

早先 zǎoxiān 见“原来” yuánlái p. 176

怎么 zěnm● I 询问原因,状况等。

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. 你能弄清这是怎么回事吗? | Can you make <i>head or tail</i> of it? |
| 2. 这是怎么回事? | <i>What's all this about?</i> |
| 3. 你怎么啦? | <i>What's the matter with you?</i> |
| 4. 你怎么今天早上不上学? | <i>Why didn't you go to school this morning?</i> |
| 5. 你怎么做成功的? | <i>How did you make it?</i> |
| 6. 我怎么当时没想到这个? | <i>How come I didn't think of it?</i> |

II 用于否定, 表示程度不足。

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1. 这个行业我不怎么熟。 | <i>I don't know much about this line.</i> |
| 2. 我跟她不怎么熟。 | <i>I am not quite familiar with her.</i> |

整整 zhěngzhěng

whole, fully

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1. 那本书整整花了他一年时间才写完。 | He has spent a <i>whole</i> year completing the book. |
| 2. 我们整整的等了她两个钟头。 | We waited for her for a <i>good</i> two hours. |
| 3. 他走了整整一天才到达那小镇。 | It took him a <i>full</i> day to get to the small town. |
| 4. 你整整有一个月的时间可以准备考试。 | You have a <i>solid</i> month to prepare for the examination. |
| 5. 她今年整整七十岁。 | She is seventy, <i>if a day</i> .
(if a day = fully) |
| 6. 现在整整有五年了。 | It is now five years <i>to a day</i> .
(to a day = exactly) |
| 7. 这事发生整整有两年了。 | It happened <i>exactly</i> two years ago. |

正当 zhèngdāng

just when

1. 正当他陷入困境之际, 她帮他解脱出来。
She helped him out *at the time when* he was in great trouble.
2. 正当我要去找他, 他就到了。
He arrived *just as* I was about to go and fetch him.
3. 正当我要去上班, 我孩子突然病了。
I was *on the point of* going to my office, when my child was suddenly taken ill.
- 正好** zhèngchǎo 见“刚好” gānghǎo p. 51
- 正巧** zhèngqiǎo 见“刚好” gānghǎo p. 51
- 之后** zhǐhòu 见“以后” yǐhòu p. 168
- 之内** zhǐnèi 见“以内” yǐnèi p. 169
- 之前** zhǐqián 见“以前” yǐqián p. 170
- 之所以……(是因为, 由于)** zhǐsuǒyǐ ... (shì yīnwèi, yóuyú)
1. 她之所以退学是因为交不起学费。
She left school *because* she couldn't afford to pay the fee.
2. 大家之所以原谅他, 是因为考虑到他的年纪。
He was *excused by reason of* his age.
3. 他之所以被开除是由于玩忽职守。
He was fired *for* neglecting his duty.
4. 这书之所以不能令人满意是由于它缺少一个有启发性的序言。
The book is unsatisfactory *in that* it lacks an illuminating introduction.
(in that 作“因为”解, 属书面语。)

5. 我们之所以编写这本书,主要是受他那坚毅的治学精神所鼓舞。
That we have compiled this volume is because we are inspired by his tenacity in his studies.
6. 我们之所以这样做,无非是为你好。
What we have done is just for your own good.
7. 他们之所以和我们合作,不过是想利用我们。
 a) *They intend to make us a cat's-paw, and that is why they want to team up with us.*
 b) *Why they want to team up with us is that they intend to make us a cat's-paw.*
8. 他之所以改变主意,原因是很明显的。
The reason why he changed his mind is quite clear.
9. 这次之所以失败是由于一些无法预见的困难造成的。
The failure arose from some unforeseen difficulties.
10. 据说许多人之所以得肺癌是因为抽烟。
It's said that many cases of lung cancer originate in smoking.

值得 zhǐde

1. 他的意见值得考虑。

be worth; deserve

- a) *His advice is worth considering.*
 b) *It is worth while to consider his advice.*
 c) *It is worth while considering his advice.*
 d) *His advice is worthy of consideration.*
 e) *His advice is worthy to be consid-*

ered.

几点说明:

1) 不能说 *It is worth considering his advice.* 因为这里的 “It” 只是形式上的主语, 真正的主语是 *considering his advice*, 所以句子变成 “*Considering his advice is worth*” 就明显地不通了。初学者应记住: *worth* 虽是形容词, 却带介词的性质, 后面需接一宾语, 而这一宾语又往往是动名词, 这句的 *worth* 没有宾语, 也就落了空。

2) 一般也不说: *His advice is worth-while considering*, 因为 *while* 是多余的。

3) *worth* 后面的动名词, 意思虽是被动的, 却不能用被动形式, 如不能说: *His advice is worth being considered*, 而必须用主动形式: *worth considering*.

2. 这电影很值得看。

The film is well worth seeing.

(*worth* 前面习惯用 “*well*” 而不用 “*very*” 搭配。)

3. 她的不幸的遭遇很值得同情。

Her misfortune is well deserving of sympathy.

4. 这是一个值得研究的问题。

It is a problem deserving of study.

5. 她的悲惨命运值得我们的同情。

Her tragic lot commands our sympathy.

6. 他的建议值得注意。

What he has suggested merits (or, warrants) our attention.

7. 目前局势值得我们密切注意。

The present situation claims our serious attention.

8. 这并不值得考虑。

This is below consideration.

直到 *zhídào*

until; up to

1. 我直到七点钟才能

I could not leave till seven o'clock.

脱身。

2. 他直到现在还没来。 He hasn't come yet.
 3. 他们是在上星期来香港的, 直到现在还在这里。 They came to Hong Kong last week, and have been here *up to now*.

只不过……(罢了) zhǐbuguò ... (bàle)

only; just

1. 这只不过是个推测。 It's just a conjecture.
 (比较 It's a *pure conjecture*. —这完全是个推测。)
2. 你瞧, 这只不过是巧合罢了。 You see, it's *merely* a coincidence.
3. 我何尝不想上大学, 只不过上不起罢了。 I'm quite willing to go to university; *it's just that* I can't afford it.
4. 我倒是想跟你们去, 只不过我太忙了。 I would go with you *except that* (or, *only*) I am too busy.
5. 你不应太苛求, 他只不过是个小孩子罢了。 You should not be too particular. He is *only* a child.
6. 许多自称喜欢园艺的人, 只不过拿它闹着玩罢了。 Many people who declare they like gardening *do no more than* play at it.
7. 所谓适应性只不过是对要学的东西感到新鲜和跃跃欲试罢了。 What is called adaptability is *little more than* (or, *is nothing but; ... no more than*) freshness and readiness to learn.

只得 zhǐdé

见“不得不” bùdé bù p. 14

只管……(好了) zhǐguǎn ... (hǎole)

by all means

1. 你有话只管跟我说好了。
2. 你只管相信我的话好了。
3. 那女孩什么也不说, 只管格格地傻笑。
4. 什么时候都行, 你只管来好了。
5. 有什么事你只管通知我。

Tell me all about it (or, Tell me everything), *by all means*.You *just* take my word for it.The girl didn't say anything but *merely* giggled.

You may come any time you like.

Keep me informed of any thing that may happen.

只好 zhǐhǎo

见“不得不” bùdé bù p. 14

只是 zhǐshì

见“只不过……(罢了)” zhǐbuguò ... (bàle) p. 184

只要 zhǐyào

if only; provided that

1. 你只要再犯同样的错误, 就要开除。
2. 只要你加劲, 我看这事准能办成。
3. 只要你喜欢, 我就把它买下来。
4. 只要他答应不再干这种事, 我就帮助他。
5. 我可以把钱借给

You'll be fired *if* you make the same mistake again.I'm sure you'll make it *if only* you would try hard enough.

(对比下条“只有……,才……” —only if)

So long as (or, *As long as*) you desire it, I'll buy it right now.I would help him, *provided that* (or, *providing*) he promises not to do it again.I can lend you the money *on condition*

- 你，只要你下礼拜五还回来就行。
(that) you return it next Friday.
6. 只要下雨，就别等我了。
In case it rains, don't expect me.
7. 只要是对社会有好处的事，他都乐意做。
He is willing to do anything that benefits the community.
8. 你只要想要，就可以拿走。
You may have it for the asking.
 (for the asking = you may have, only ask for it.)
9. 只要是值得做的事，都值得好好去做。
Whatever is worth doing at all is worth doing well.
10. 只要稍微小心一些就可以了。
A little care is all that is necessary.
11. 这非常简单，你只要跟着做就行。
It's so very simple; all you have to do is to watch and follow.
12. 只要记住这些基本规则就够了。
It's enough to remember these basic rules.
13. 只要耐心做工作，我相信我们可以把他争过来。
With patient work, I'm sure we can win him over.
14. 只要是活着，就会有希望。
While there is life there is hope.
15. 只要有决心，总会有办法。
Where there is a will, there is a way.
16. 只要有机会，她就使劲多赚点钱。
Whenever there is a chance, she will try hard to earn more money.
17. 只要你听话，我一定给你买个冰淇淋。
So far as you behave yourself, I will buy you an ice.

18. 只要你到家, 你就安全了。 *Once you get home, you are safe.*
19. 只要你一来电话, 我马上就过来。 *I'll come over as soon as you call me up.*

只有……, (才)…… zhǐyǒu ..., (cái) ...

only if; alone

1. 我跟他说, 只有加劲, 才能把事办成。 *I told him he would make it only if he tried hard enough.*
(对比上条“只要” —if only 条)
2. 只有这样, 我们才能跟他取得联系。 *Only in this way can we get in touch with him.*
3. 只有他该为这次事故负责。 *He alone should be responsible for the accident.*
4. 只有老年生病的才能留下。 *None but the aged and the sick will stay.*

至迟 zhǐchí

at (the) latest

1. 我估计至迟星期五这工作就能干完。
a) *I think we'll finish the job on Friday at the latest.*
b) *I don't think the job will be finished later than Friday.*
2. 我既然答应了你, 你就听我的好了, 至迟是五月吧。 *You may depend upon what I promised you, before May, at (the) farthest.*

至多 zhìduō

at (the) most

1. 法官至多只能判那犯人五年徒刑。 *At most, the judge could only sentence the criminal to five years' imprisonment.*
2. 我至多就能干这么 *This is the most I can do.*

一些。

3. 我至多就能告诉你这么些。
4. 这汽车每小时至多能跑 150 英里。
5. 这钱至多够用一个星期。
6. 我在北京至多只能呆三天。
7. 这电影院至多能容纳 800 人。
8. 我至多能出这个价钱。

This is *all* I can tell you.

The *maximum* speed of the car is 150 miles per hour.

The money can last a week *at best*.

I can stay in Beijing for three days *at the longest*.

a) The seating capacity of the cinema is 800 people.

b) The cinema can hold *a maximum of* 800 people.

This is *the best* price I can offer.

至今 zhìjīn

1. 我们至今一共收过他十封信。
2. 好几年前她就开始写那小说;看来,她至今还未脱稿。
3. 我不明白他为什么至今还没露脸。
4. 听说李教授也在这学院教书,然而我至今还没有机会认识他。

up to now

We have had ten letters from him *up to now*.

She started writing a novel a few years ago, and it seems she hasn't finished it *so far*.

I wonder why he hasn't shown up *yet*.

I hear Prof. Lee is also teaching at the college, but I haven't had the honour of meeting him *until now*.

至少 zhìshǎo

1. 据我了解,他至少

at (the) least

So far as I know, he is familiar with

- 熟悉四种语言。
at least four languages.
2. 你要拿不出一千块钱来, 那至少也得给我八百。
 If you cannot spare a thousand dollars, let me have at the very least eight hundred.
3. 如果她算不上绝世佳人的话, 那至少也是非常非常漂亮的了。
 If not being a rare beauty, she is very, very pretty, *to say the least.*
4. 他口袋里至少有一百元。
 He has not less than \$100 in his pocket.
 (not less than 不能改成 no less than, 因为 no less than 作“多达一百元”解, 即 as much as \$100, 而 “not less than” 则含有 at least 或 may be more than 之意。)
5. 依我看, 他要得不到冠军, 至少也能得亚军。
 In my opinion, if he cannot win the championship, he will *at any rate* get a second.
6. 你能吃苦耐劳, 我感到很高兴, 但是你至少不应忽视身体健康。
 I appreciate your hardiness but you shouldn't, *on any account*, neglect your health.

至于 zhìyú

- as for
1. 至于那幅画, 我也说不清我是不是真喜欢它。
As to that picture, I don't know that I care for it very much.
2. 至于我自己, 我倒宁可要茶也不要咖啡。
As for myself, I will say that I prefer tea to coffee.
3. 至于如何着手工作, 大家的意见还
As regards the question how we should proceed in our work, there is still some

- 不一致。
 4. 至于诈骗行为的指控，我们认为他是无罪的。
 5. 我看他不至于沉溺于声色吧！
 6. 我想他不至于不来吧。
 7. 你当时如果帮她一把的话，她就不至于退学了。

difference of opinion.

With respect to (or, *With regard to*) the charge of fraud, we deem that he was innocent.

He won't indulge himself in sensual pleasure, I hope.

I don't think he will *go as far as* not to come.

If you had helped her out, she would not have to quit school.

终究 zhōngjiū

参阅“毕竟” *bìjīng* p. 11 和“到底” *dàodǐ* p. 37

终于 zhōngyú

1. 原先很难买到马戏团的票，但我们终于弄着了。
 2. 他沉溺于声色，终于把身子搞垮了。
 3. 年青夫妇彼此将近一个星期不说话，可是终于感到后悔，又和好如初。
 4. 罪犯躲在一个小洞里，可是终于被警察抓住。
 5. 他们的一切努力终于失败。
 6. 他想跟那有钱的老

at last

We had great difficulty in obtaining the tickets for the circus, but *at last* we made it.

He took to sensual pleasure and wore himself down *in the end*.

The young couple weren't on speaking terms for nearly a week, but *finally* felt sorry about it and made up.

The criminal concealed himself in a cave but was *eventually* captured by the police.

All their efforts *resulted in* failure.

His plan of marrying the rich old maid

姑娘结婚的打算终于成为泡影。

ended in bubbles.

主要 zhǔyào

1. 这次事故的责任主要在我。
2. 我的学生主要是欧洲人。
3. 他学会计的主要原因是想找个好工作。
4. 这个计划的主要优点是什么?
5. 他的工资主要用在房租和伙食上。
6. 多瑙河是欧洲的主要河流之一。

mainly

I should be the one who is *largely* responsible for the accident.

My students are *mainly* Europeans.

His *primary* reason for studying accounting is to get a better job.

What are the *chief* merits of this plan?

He spent *the major part of* his salary for rent and food.

The Danube is one of the *principal* rivers of Europe.

自然 zìrán

1. 这合同自然是要签订的。
2. 听见他们提到我的名字, 我自然就十分注意了。
3. 她爱继父是很自然的事, 因为他对她如同己出。
4. 我自然是要跟你们去的。
5. 春天自然会随着冬天到来。

naturally

The contract will be signed *as a matter of course*.

When I heard them mention my name, I was *naturally* all ears.

It was quite natural that she loved her step-father, because he treated her as his own daughter.

Of course, I will go with you.

It goes without saying that spring is to follow winter.

6. 他比其他人都胜一等，所以他自然就赢得那奖学金了。
As he was a notch above the others, he was bound to win the scholarship.
7. 他已经答应了，自然是要做的。
There is no doubt that he will do as promised.
8. 他自然是个见过世面的人罗！
He has *certain* (or, *doubtless*) seen better days.
9. “你真的要我跟你合伙吗？”
“那自然罗！”
“Do you really want me to be your partner?”
“To be sure, I do.”
10. 那我自然是很高兴的。
I shall be very happy *indeed*.

总归 zǒngguī

参阅“毕竟” bǐjìng p. 11 和“到底” dàodǐ p. 37

总算 zǒngsuàn

finally

1. 我们等了他整整两个钟头，不过他总算来了。
We waited for him for a good two hours, and *finally* he came.
2. 辛辛苦苦地干了一星期的活儿，我们总算得到两天的休息。
After a whole week's hard work, we had *at last* a well-earned rest for two days.
3. 他一再向她求婚，后来总算成功了。
He tried everything to win her hand and made it *in the long run*.
4. 他极力劝导她，最后她总算回心转意了。
He did all he could to persuade her, and she came round *in the end*.
5. 我们的建议总算被采纳了。
Our suggestion was *eventually* accepted.

最 zuì

1. 她是这舞蹈团最拔尖的。一位。
2. 桃花在早春开得最茂盛。
3. 美国在当时最为强盛。
4. 看样子她早晨精神最差。
5. 这世界上她最宝贵的东西是那只波斯猫。
6. 很显然，下雨对于拍照最为不利。
7. 追女孩子是他最新的爱好。

most

She is *by far* the *best* dancer in the troupe.

(*by far* 修饰比较级和最高级，强调程度和效果。)

Peach blossoms are *at their best* in early spring.

The States was then *at its strongest*.

It seems she is *at her worst* in the morning.

Of all things in the world, the Persian cat is the *most* precious to her.

Obviously, raining is the *most* impeding thing *possible* for photography.

Running after girls is his *latest* hobby.

最初 zuìchū

1. 最初他感到要赶上班上同学很吃力，但他非常用功，后来进步很大。
2. 她最初对他的印象并不突出，但是她越了解他，就越喜欢他。
3. 他们最初合股的时候，彼此配合得很协调，但后来在企

at first

At first he found it difficult to catch up with the class, but he worked hard and made great progress later.

Her first impression of him was nothing striking. But the more she got to know him, the more she liked him.

At the *outset* of their partnership, they cooperated with each other harmoniously. But later on, they had different

- 业如何发展的问题上, 就意见分歧了。
4. 乔和珍相好的事, 我最初就说过长不了。
5. 他们最初的计划是想打我们一个措手不及。
6. 有一些传说谈及非洲人最初航海到美洲的情况。
7. 在发展的最初阶段, 他们必然要克服很多困难。
- views on the development of the enterprise.
- Jo and Jane's love would not last long, as I said *at the beginning* of their affair.
- Their *original* plan is to make a surprise attack on us.
- There are stories of *early* African voyagers to America.
- They had to get over a great deal of difficulties in the *initial* (or, *early, first*) stage of development.

最多 zuìduō

1. 这个单位最多值五十万港元。
2. 我最多也就能为你做到这个程度。
3. 她看起来很高, 不过我猜最多是五英尺半。
4. 大家都认为他们俩相好最多能持续三个月。
5. 他们俩人在互相排斥, 最多只能做到勉强容忍。
- at (the) most
- The flat should cost HK \$ 500,000 *at the most*.
- a) That is the *utmost* I can do for you.
b) That is *all* I can do for you.
- She looks tall, but I suppose *at the outside* not five feet six.
(at the outside = at the utmost)
- We all think their love can last three months *at the best*.
- The two tend to reject each other and *the best that can be hoped* is mutual tolerance.

6. 小巴最多能载十四人。
 a) The minibus can hold a maximum of 14 persons.
 b) The minibus has a *peak capacity* of 14 persons.
7. 我猜这小家伙最多只有三岁。
 The little boy *can't* be over three, I suppose.
8. 从这里到邮局最多十分钟。
 It *won't* take you *more than ten minutes* to get to the post-office.
9. 我看我最多能呆上半小时。
 a) I *don't* think I can stay *longer than half an hour*.
 b) I can stay for half an hour *at the longest*, I suppose.

最好 zuihǎo

1. 你最好早日给我一个答复。
 had better
It would be best if you could give me an early reply.
2. 我们最好跟他取得联系。
 We *had better* (or, *had best*) get in touch with him.
3. 你最好还是去跟经理谈一谈。
It would be wise for you to go and have a talk with the manager.
4. 你最好还是不要把这事张扬出去。
 You would *do well* to hush up the thing.
 (to do well 意思是 to be for one's interest 一为自己利益起见。再举例: You will do well to refuse his request.)
5. 你最好解释清楚为什么要干这样一件蠢事。
It would be well for you to explain why you should do such a foolish thing.
 (to be well 和 to do well 意思相同。)
6. 你最好在股市暴跌的时候把全部股票
It is expedient that you should sell all your stock on the sharp decline in the

放出。

7. 这个星期哪天去远足都行，不过最好是星期六。

8. 她似乎早上的时候精神最好。

stock market.

a) We may go hiking on any day of the week, but I *prefer* Saturday.

b) As for hiking, any day of the week will do, but *preferably* on Saturday.

It seems she is *at her best* in the morning.

最好是 zuǐhǎoshì

见“还是” háishi p. 59

最后 zuǐhòu

last, final

1. 他告诉他们：要跟他们分道扬镳，而且这是他的最后决定。

He told them he would part company with them, and his decision is *final*.

2. 最后他还是难逃一死。

At last he met his doom.

3. 就在七十岁那年，她咽了最后一口气，一点也没受什么折磨。

At seventy she peacefully breathed her *last*.

4. 最后出去的人请把全部的灯关上。

The *last* out will please turn off all the lights.

5. 我们决心坚持到最后。

We will hold out *till the uttermost* (or, *till last*).

6. 我们决心战斗到最后。

We will fight *to the last ditch*.

7. 他大卖力气，最后得到了老板的欢心。

He tried hard and *at length* succeeded in winning the favour of his boss.

8. 骗人的事可得手于一时，最后总是不会有什么好处的。
Dishonesty may profit once, but turns out unprofitable *in the long run*.
9. 依我看，他最后一定会明白过来的。
I think the truth will dawn on him *in the end*.
10. 诗人最后又把那十四行诗润色一番。
The poet gave his sonnet a *finishing touch*.
11. 我想提醒你，月底就是付款的最后一天。
Mind you, the end of the month is the *deadline* for payment.
12. 这首诗很美，人们都认为这是那位大诗人最后的绝唱。
That beautiful poem is considered as *the swan song* of the poet.
13. 他把最后一个房间拿来作书房。
The room *farthest back* was turned into his study.
14. 他们在最后一刻给他解了围。
They came to his rescue *at the eleventh hour*.
(at the eleventh hour = at the last moment)
15. 他们给他发出的最后通牒限期在周末。
The *ultimatum* they sent him would expire at the week-end.
16. 他在投机事业上一败涂地，现在他那富有的姑妈倒成了他的最后依靠了。
He lost all his money in speculation, and so his rich aunt is his *sheet anchor* now.
(sheet anchor = sth. on which one can depend)
17. 这次聚会最后合唱了一首民歌就结束了。
The party *ended with* a chorus of a folk song.
18. 最后我们举杯祝他
To crown the celebration, we drank a

身体健康，结束了
这个庆祝会。 toast to his health.

最近 zuijin

recently

1. 最近两国会谈毫无进展。
The *recent* talks between the two nations have made no headway.
2. 他和我 是老朋友了，不过我们最近没有见面。
He and I are old friends, but we haven't seen each other *lately*.
3. 她最近好像是病了。
It seems she has been ill *of late*.
4. 他最近几天没来电话。
He hasn't called up in the *last few days*.
5. 你最近一次在香港是什么时候？
When were you in Hong Kong last?
6. 根据最近的消息，他被选为名誉主席。
According to the *latest* news he is elected honorary chairman.

最晚 zuìwǎn

见“至迟” zhìchí p. 187

左右 zuǒyòu

more or less

1. 现在是六点左右。
It's *about* (or, *around*) six o'clock.
2. 我等了半个钟头左右。
I've waited for half an hour *or so*.
3. 从这里走，需要一天左右。
It's *more or less* a day's journey from here.

附录: Empty Words

Introduction

Here we will not define “empty words” (虚词) as a Chinese grammarian would in a grammar book. Our aim is rather to help the reader understand the importance of “empty words” in translating Chinese into English.

The Function of “Empty Words”

Strictly speaking, there are no morphological changes in the Chinese language. Word order and the use of “empty words” are critical, because they are the basis of word formation and sentence construction.

“Empty Words” (虚词) and “Solid Words” (实词)

In the Chinese language, all words can be divided into two categories: “solid words” and “empty words.” Traditionally, 名词 (nouns), 动词 (verbs), 助动词 (auxiliary verbs), 形容词 (adjectives), 数词 (numerals), 量词 (measure words) and 代词 (pronouns) have been regarded as “solid words”, and 副词 (adverbs), 介词 (prepositions), 连词 (conjunctions), 助词 (particles), 叹词 (interjections) and 象声词 (onomatopoeia) as “empty words”.

Most Chinese grammarians define “solid words” as words which can be used independently and “empty words” as words that cannot. In fact, this is somewhat oversimplified. In the following sentences:

1. 你跟我一块儿来,好吗? ——好!
 (“Will you come with me?”—“O.K.”)
2. 你要买我的画: ——全部!

“You want to buy my paintings?” — “All of them!”)

3. 你爱我吗? —— 永远, 永远!

(“Do you love me!” — “Always!”)

“好” (fine, O.K.), “全部” (all) and “永远” (always) are “empty words” or adverbial phrases, yet they are used independently. In such cases, they are classified by certain unconventional grammarians as “semi-solid”.

Some words can be classified as “semi-empty” too, for example:

谁先到达终点, 谁先拿奖杯。

(He who finishes first wins the cup.)

The word “谁” (any person) is a noun, which is a “solid word”, but it does not stand for a specific person, and thus it is not solid. Furthermore, the two “谁” connect the two sentences and in a sense play the role of conjunctions. A conjunction is an “empty word”, and therefore we have reason enough to classify “谁” in this sentence as “semi-empty”.

The Number of “Empty Words”

Although there are innumerable “solid words”, the number of “empty words” is comparatively small. Besides approximately 600 adverbs, many of which can be considered “semi-empty”, there are perhaps one hundred more.

However, adjectives which Chinese grammarians classify as “solid words” can in many cases be adverbs or adverbial phrases which are part of “empty words”. For example, “一点儿” (a bit, a little) can be both an adjective and adverbial phrase. The following sentences demonstrate the use of “一点儿” as an adjective:

1. 她为了减肥, 每天只吃一点儿东西。

(She only takes a few bites every day in order to lose

weight.)

2. 他这人一点儿头脑也没有。
(He is a man without a grain of sense.)
3. 他的证供一点真实性也没有。
(There is not a shred of truth in his statement.)
4. 她这个人一点幽默感也没有。
(She is a woman entirely lacking humour.)
5. 他每天晚上都喝一点儿威士忌。
(He drinks a dram/a tot of whisky every evening.)
6. 我有一点感冒了。
(I've got a touch of flu.)
7. 这汤欠了一点儿盐。
(The soup can do with a touch more salt. /The soup needs a trifle more salt.)

“一点儿” can be used adverbially as follows:

1. 他这人有一点爱拍。
(He is something of a soft-soaper.)
2. 她今天似乎好一点儿了。
(She looks a shade better today.)
3. 他对衣着一点儿也不讲究。
(He doesn't care a whit about his clothes.)
4. 他恐怕有一点儿醉了。
(I'm afraid he's had one too many/he's a wee bit drunk.)
5. 他差一点就破产了。
(He was within an ace of ruin. /He was all but bankrupt. /He was on the brink of bankruptcy.)
6. 她说话一点儿真的都没有。
(There is not an iota of/a scintilla of truth in what she says.)
7. 我一点儿也不喜欢这幅画。
(The painting has no appeal for me whatsoever/ doesn't

appeal to me at all.)

Some adjectives and numerals, especially the ordinal numbers (序数词) and the approximate numbers (概数词) are, in a broad sense, “empty words”. For instance, the ordinal numbers:

“头” in “头场比赛” (the first half of the game)

“末” in “末班车” (the last bus)

“初” in “初小” (the junior primary school)

“高” in “高中” (the senior middle school)

“大” in “大儿子” (the eldest son)

“小” in “小女儿” (the youngest daughter)

and the approximate numbers:

“多” in “六十多岁” (over sixty)

“几” in “几天” (a few days)

“来” in “二十来个鸡蛋” (about two dozen eggs)

“多少” in “多少有点失望” (feeling somewhat disappointed)

“上下” / “左右” in “六十上下/左右” (about sixty)

Why Are “Empty Words” Difficult to Translate?

Generally speaking, “solid words” are not difficult to deal with in Chinese-English translation. For example, in a sentence like “她昨天要我跟她去看电影”: “她—she”, “昨天—yesterday”, “要—want”, “我—me”, “去看—go to see”, “电影—movie” are all “solid words”, and the Chinese sentence can be easily rendered into English: “Yesterday she wanted me to go to the movies with her”. However, if we add emphasis with the adverbial phrase “非……不可” (simply must), the Chinese will read “她昨天非要我跟她去看电影不可”. Here the emphatic and commanding tone of the Chinese phrase “非……不可” is relatively difficult to translate. Some possible renderings are: “Yesterday she insisted on my going to the movies with her” or “Yesterday she thought I just had to go to the cinema with her”. As “非……不可” expresses an

emphatic tone, the English translation should vary accordingly, and equivalent emphatic expressions should be used. For example, “在舆论的压力下他们非让步不可。” — “Under the pressure of public opinion they will have no alternative but to yield”. English expressions such as “to have no alternative /choice/option but” suggest the same degree of emphasis as the Chinese “非……不可”.

Other examples can show how English translations vary according to different degrees of emphasis in Chinese:

1. 香烟像疯了似的加价,我相信你能明白,现在是非戒烟不可了。

Here “非……不可” is not specially emphatic; it can be rendered as follows: As the price of cigarettes shoots up, I trust you realize the need to give up smoking.

2. 你要是把车子开得那么快,到头来非进医院不可。

Here “非……不可” is not so emphatic, and it can be translated in this way: You'll wind up in hospital if you drive so fast.

3. 现在你非向她道歉不可了。

Here “非……不可” is strongly emphatic, so the English equivalent should maintain the same tone: All you can do now is offer her an apology.

4. 他既然是发起人,那他今天非到场不可。

Here “非……不可” is rather emphatic, and the phrase should be translated similarly: Since he is the man who initiated it, he is bound to be present today.

5. 我看这事情不见得非你去干不可。

Here “非……不可” is less emphatic: I don't think you're the only person who can do the job.

6. 我是作者,所以我对出版商说:你们可以在编辑方面加工,但要改动手稿内容,非得我同意不可。

Here “非……不可” is specially emphatic, so it can be translated in more formal language: As the writer of the manuscript, I told the publisher he could do some editorial polishing

on it, but any changes in content could only be made subject to my consent.

Mastering "Empty-Words"

As "empty words" present an immense challenge, it is important for a Chinese-English translator to make a thorough study of them. He should first of all study Chinese grammar, especially 连词 (conjunctions), 关联词 (correlatives) and 复句 (complex sentences).

In English a conjunction often joins two sentences or clauses, but in Chinese there may be no conjunction in between. For example:

1. 他是教师,我是学生。
(He is a teacher, and I am a student.)
2. 他刚走,她就来了。
(As soon as he had left, she arrived.)
3. 风停了,雨也就小了。
(When the wind had stopped, the rain was letting up.)
4. 他们下午来,我在家等着。
(As they are coming this afternoon, I'll wait at home.)

According to some Chinese grammarians, the above examples are 意合法 ("implied correlatives"). Chinese-English translators should familiarize themselves with this construction and insert an appropriate conjunction.

All the correlatives are "empty words", as they consist of conjunctions connecting clauses and adverbs that have the function of linking more than one phrase and sentence, such as "又……又……" (both...and...), "越……越……" (the more...the more...), "因为……所以……" (because), "不但……而且……" (not only...but also...), "既然……也就……" (now that...), "一边……一边……" (at the same time as...), etc. Some are difficult to deal with and may baffle Chinese-English translators in some contexts. For example

“忽而……忽而……”in“她情绪忽而好忽而坏,这又使她的男朋友忽而高兴忽而灰心——”,“一方面……(另)一方面”in“一方面行贿,一方面则利用敲诈,他弄了一大笔钱”,“与其……,不如……”in“与其说她漂亮,不如说她迷人”and so on.

Complex sentences include in wide range of “empty words.” They comprise both coordinate complex sentence (并列复句) and subordinate complex sentence (偏正复句). The following table gives the different relations between all the clauses in complex sentences:

Complex Sentence 复句

Coordinate Complex Sentence 并列复句	Subordinate Complex Sentence 偏正复句
Coordinative relation 联合关系	Adverse relation 转折关系
Successive relation 承接关系	Causative relation 因果关系
Progressive relation 递进关系	Conditional relation 条件关系
Alternative relation 选择关系	Hypothetical relation 假设关系
	Purposive relation 目的关系
	Preference relation 取舍关系

Various “empty words” are used to describe the nature of all the relations in complex sentences.

Conclusion

Perhaps it may be helpful to restate the following points:

1. "Empty words" are not defined here as they would be in a Chinese grammar book. They are viewed in the light of translating Chinese into English.
2. The use of "empty words" together with word order are the basis of word formation and sentence construction.
3. "Empty words" can sometimes be used independently.
4. "Empty words", though relatively small in number compared to "solid words", present an immense challenge. They are difficult to deal with and may baffle Chinese-English translators in some contexts.
5. It is essential that a Chinese-English translator make a thorough study of "empty words". He should study Chinese grammar, especially conjunctions, correlatives, including "implied correlatives" and complex sentences.

By Ian P.K. Wong

